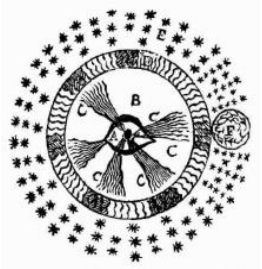
Created: 2/18/2009
Revised: 12/12/2025

# JANE LEAD



# A FOUNTAIN of Gardens

## Volume 2

Journal Entries for the
Year 1677

**S**pirit's **D**ay **V**ersion

With Modern Language & Paragraph Numbering

Edited by
Diane Guerrero

*A Fountain of Gardens, Volume 2,* by Jane Lead

*Spirit's Day Version (SDV),* by Diane Guerrero

Electronic text source: Early English Books Online (EEBO), in compliance with Terms of Use. https://name.umdl.umich.edu/A49867.0001.001

Editing and additional transcribing by Diane Guerrero

Spirit's Day Version (SDV) © 2018, 2024, 2025 by Diane Guerrero.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form without written permission of the copyright holder.

Diane Guerrero, Editor
Spirit's Day Studies
The Writings of Jane Lead
www.Janelead.org
diane@janelead.org

The Spirit's Day mission is to sound the trumpet-alarm for the coming Kingdom of Christ's Love; and to reach and equip the Children of the Kingdom, in preparation for this ultimate and glorious event, through the literary works of ancient, prophetical, holy and devout souls.

## About the Spirit's Day Version

The goal of the Spirit's Day Version (SDV) is to assist the modern reader wherever archaic language might prove difficult in reading and understanding these glorious Mysteries. The paramount ambition was to remain faithful to the text, while preserving the beautiful writing style of this Mystical Author, and the classical flavor of the time period. The SDV is not a paraphrase, thus the writer's beautiful prose and unique terminology remain intact. For more information about how this version was prepared, please visit About the SDV on the website.

As the manifestation of the Kingdom of the Love draws near, His promised Spirit will explain all things, and lead us into all Truth. For indeed only the Anointed Holy Seekers and Loving Inquirers shall truly understand and advance in these profound Mysteries, as presented to us by the Spirit of Truth—whom we are to earnestly look for, and diligently wait upon.

Diane Guerrero
Editor of the Spirit's Day Version

†††

A

# FOUNTAIN

OF

# Gardens.

## Vol. II.

Being a Continuation of the Proceſs of a Life according to *Faith*, of the Divinely *Magical* Knowledge, and of the *New Creation*.

IN

## Mutual ENTERTAINMENTS

BETWIXT

The Eſſential Wiſdom, and the Soul in her Progreſs through *Paradiſe*, to Mount *Sion*, and to the *New Jeruſalem*.

By *J. LEAD*.

Iſa. LVIII. 11.

*Thou ſhalt be like a Watered* GARDEN, *and like a Spring of Water, whoſe Waters fail not.*

*London*, Printed, and Sold by the Bookſellers of *London* and *Weſtminſter*, 1697.

# CONTENTS

**PREFACE BY FRANCIS LEE** ..... **9**

**THE EPISTLE OF THE AUTHOR** ..... **14**

**CHAPTER 1** ..... **17**

January 1, 1677 Wisdom's Merchandize ..... 17
January 7, 1677 The True Mystical Passover* ..... 18
January 12, 1677 The Parable of the Two Children: or, The Two Hairy Goats* ..... 19

**CHAPTER 2** ..... **21**

January 13, 1677 The Priestly Robe of the New Body* ..... 21
January 14, 1677 The Melchizedek Priesthood ..... 21
January 14, 1677 The Marriage of the Lamb Represented ..... 22
January 15, 1677 The Nuptial Conjunction* ..... 22
January 20, 1677 The Slumbering Trance* ..... 23
January 23, 1677 The High Priestly Garment* ..... 24

**CHAPTER 3** ..... **25**

January 25, 1677 The Death of Moses ..... 25
January 26, 1677 The Death of Moses (cont.)* ..... 25
January 27, 1677 Some Means to this Perfect Death ..... 26
January 28, 1677 The Hope of Transmutation* ..... 27
January 30, 1677 Ascent from Mount Nebo* ..... 27
February 1, 1677 The Dark and Light Clouds* ..... 28

**CHAPTER 4** ..... **29**

February 2, 1677 The Crystalline Gate ..... 29
February 3, 1677 The Altar Stone ..... 29
February 7, 1677 The New-Born Will* ..... 31
February 8, 1677 The Arrow of the Will* ..... 31
February 10, 1677 The Bride-Mate of the Will* ..... 32

**CHAPTER 5** ..... **33**

February 11, 1677 The Divided Will: An Opening upon Mark 10:28-30* ..... 33
February 14, 1677 Wisdom's Merchandize ..... 34
February 14, 1677 A Great Gift* ..... 35
February 15, 1677 Hold Fast The Helm* ..... 35
February 17, 1677 A Second Opening upon Mark 10:28-30 ..... 35

**CHAPTER 6** ..... **37**

February 18, 1677 Jonah in the Whale's Belly ..... 37
February 21, 1677 The Originality of Evil: or, The Vision of the Cloth Let Down* ..... 37
February 22, 1677 The Body of Love* ..... 40
February 24, 1677 The Spiritual and Natural Man Compared ..... 40
February 25, 1677 The Embroidered Robe* ..... 41
February 26, 1677 Two in One Bed* ..... 41

**CHAPTER 7** ..... **42**
March 1, 1677 Of Natural Conscience ..... 42
March 2, 1677 Paradise Local and Mystical ..... 42
March 3, 1677 More on Paradise Local and Mystical* ..... 43
March 4, 1677 The Glassy-Sea ..... 44
March 5, 1677 How a Spiritual Man is to walk towards God and those of the Earth ..... 45
March 7, 1677 The Melchizedek Priesthood ..... 45
**CHAPTER 8** ..... **47**
March 8, 1677 Vision of the Eagle-Brood: An Interpretation of 1Timothy 2:15* ..... 47
March 9, 1677 Interpretation of the Vision ..... 47
March 10, 1677 Sepently Worms* ..... 51
**CHAPTER 9** ..... **52**
March 11, 1677 Vision of the Wonder-Woman, and of the Naked Child ..... 52
March 12, 1677 Interpretation of the Wonder-Woman ..... 52
March 13, 1677 Interpretation of the Naked Child: or, the Nazarite Birth* ..... 54
March 14, 1677 Vision of the Young Dragon* ..... 55
**CHAPTER 10** ..... **57**
March 18, 1677 The First-Born Israelite* ..... 57
March 19, 1677 Adam's Fig-Tree ..... 57
March 20, 1677 Queen Esther ..... 59
March 22, 1677 Vision of the Gainsaying Spirits* ..... 61
March 23, 1677 The Crown of Anointing* ..... 61
March 24, 1677 Death in the Pot* ..... 62
**CHAPTER 11** ..... **63**
April 8, 1677 The Seven Principle Shepherds ..... 63
April 10, 1677 The Revelation of the Holy Element ..... 65
**CHAPTER 12** ..... **69**
April 18, 1677 The True Shunammite ..... 69
April 20, 1677 Vision of the Hand* ..... 70
April 22, 1677 The Mountain of Faith, and the City of Strength ..... 72
April 23, 1677 A Further Discourse upon this High Mountain ..... 72
**CHAPTER 13** ..... **74**
April 26, 1677 The Cherubinical Birth ..... 74
April 27, 1677 Various Mansions and Regions of Separated Souls ..... 76
**CHAPTER 14** ..... **80**
April 28, 1677 The Vision of Christ ..... 80
May 1, 1677 The Original Language ..... 81
May 2, 1677 More on the Original Language* ..... 82
May 3, 1677 More on the Original Language* ..... 83
**CHAPTER 15** ..... **84**
May 7, 1677 Not Far from the Kingdom of God* ..... 84
May 8, 1677 The Whole Sale (Wisdom's Merchandize) ..... 84
May 9, 1677 The Trial of Love ..... 85
May 11, 1677 The Unmixed Ministration ..... 86

**CHAPTER 16** ..... **88**
May 13, 1677 The Glassy Book ..... 88
May 15, 1677 All Flesh shall see the Glory of the Lord* ..... 88
May 17, 1677 The Glory of the Lord* ..... 88
May 18, 1677 A Clear and Pure Gospel Ministry* ..... 88
May 19, 1677 Mystery of the Glassy Book Opened* ..... 89
May 20, 1677 The Burning Wheels ..... 90
May 21, 1677 The Breath of the Sacred Fire* ..... 90
May 23, 1677 The Cup of Eucharist ..... 91
May 26, 1677 Vision of the Officer with a Gown: More on the Golden Cup* ..... 92

**CHAPTER 17** ..... **93**
June 1, 1677 Vision Upon the Doctor's Taking a House ..... 93
June 3, 1677 The Transmuting Fire ..... 94
June 4, 1677 The Sapphire Tree ..... 95
June 5, 1677 Interpretation of the Oriental Tree* ..... 95
June 6, 1677 A Sight of the Wars in Christendom ..... 95
June 7, 1677 Rules to be Observed by the Passengers through Paradise to Mount-Sion ..... 96
June 8, 1677 The Carnal Mind and the Pure Mind* ..... 96
June 17, 1677 Flakes of Fire* ..... 97
June 23, 1677 Sarah and Abimelech ..... 97
June 24, 1677 Abraham and Sarah* ..... 98

**CHAPTER 18** ..... **100**
June 30, 1677 The Birth of Cyrus ..... 100
July 1, 1677 The Mystery of Babylon ..... 101
July 2, 1677 The Holy Sabbath of the Church in the 7th Millennium ..... 102
July 3, 1677 Jacob's Star Rising* ..... 102
July 11, 1677 The Mystery Key* ..... 103
July 12, 1677 The Intellectual Foundation in the Breast of Jesus ..... 104
July 13, 1677 The Spiritual Banker* ..... 105
July 16, 1677 The Spirit of Revelation not Ceased ..... 105

**CHAPTER 19** ..... **107**
July 17, 1677 The Seven Ascending Steps, or Seven Degrees of the Spirit ..... 107
July 18, 1677 The Gospel Milk* ..... 108
July 19, 1677 The Seven Degrees (cont.)* ..... 108
July 20, 1677 The Feast of the Spirit ..... 109
July 21, 1677 Wrestling Spirits* ..... 110

**CHAPTER 20** ..... **111**
July 22, 1677 The Magical Heart, and its Several Properties ..... 111
July 23, 1677 Partnership with this Perfect Heart* ..... 113
July 24, 1677 Meditation and Recollection ..... 113
July 26, 1677 The Measuring Line in the Hand of a Child ..... 114
July 31, 1677 More on the Magical Heart, and its Several Properties ..... 115
August 1, 1677 The Three Distinct Hearts* ..... 116

**CHAPTER 21** ..... **117**
August 7, 1677 A Dialogue Between Satan and Christ About the Redemption of the Body ..... 117
August 8, 1677 The Reply of that Bright Spirit against whom the Charge was ..... 118
August 10, 1677 The Cloud of Temptation ..... 119
August 18, 1677 The Walks of the Spirit ..... 120
August 19, 1677 Vision of the Two Trees* ..... 121
August 20, 1677 More on the Walks of the Spirit* ..... 122

**CHAPTER 22** ..... **124**
August 21, 1677 The Alpha and Omega ..... 124
August 22, 1677 The Water-Stone ..... 124
August 23, 1677 Wisdom's Merchandize ..... 126
August 25, 1677 An Apparition of a Deceased Friend, and the Discourse with Him ..... 126
August 26, 1677 The Law of Love's Loyalty* ..... 127
August 27, 1677 The Curious Workmanship ..... 128
August 28, 1677 Interpretation of the Curious Workmanship* ..... 128
August 29, 1677 The Narrow Passage ..... 129

**CHAPTER 23** ..... **131**
August 31, 1677 The Priestly Magi ..... 131
September 10, 1677 The Death-Cup* ..... 132
September 11, 1677 The Able Physician ..... 133
September 12, 1677 Day and Night* ..... 134
September 13, 1677 The School of the Divine Magia, or, The Glassy Ark ..... 134
September 14, 1677 Interpretation of the Vision of the Glassy Ark* ..... 135
September 15, 1677 The Pearl of Faith ..... 136
September 16, 1677 Interpretation of the Vision of the Pearl ..... 137

**CHAPTER 24** ..... **138**
September 29, 1677 The Father's Name ..... 138
October 1, 1677 The Mount of Elijah, or The Mystery of Faith ..... 139
October 4, 1677 Creating Faith* ..... 140
October 5, 1677 The Glassy Trumpet* ..... 140
October 8, 1677 The Sparkling Stone of Faith* ..... 140
October 9, 1677 Interpretation of the Mount of Elijah, given on October 1st) ..... 142

**CHAPTER 25** ..... **144**
October 10, 1677 The Lily Spirit ..... 144
October 11, 1677 Interpretation of the Lily Spirit* ..... 144
October 12, 1677 The Everlasting Morning-Day* ..... 145
October 15, 1677 You Shall be Holy* ..... 146
October 18, 1677 The Two Golden Candlesticks ..... 146
October 19, 1677 The Bright Sun, and Many Stars* ..... 146
October 20, 1677 Ask and You Shall Receive* ..... 146
October 25, 1677 The Key of the Government* ..... 146
October 26, 1677 Rules for Preserving the Virgin Purity* ..... 147
October 27, 1677 The Blast of the Terrible One* ..... 148
October 28, 1677 Openings from the Center of Love and Joy* ..... 148
October 29, 1677 The Hand of the Lord ..... 148

**CHAPTER 26** ..... **149**
November 16, 1677 The Marriage-Bed* ..... 149
November 17, 1677 The Hand of the Lord ..... 149
November 20, 1677 The Return of the Everlasting Joy* ..... 149
November 21, 1677 The Still and Silent State* ..... 149
November 22, 1677 The Crystal Heart* ..... 150
November 23, 1677 Rolling Away of the Old Stony Heart* ..... 151
November 24, 1677 The Munition-Rock* ..... 152
November 26, 1677 The Pool of Burning Oil* ..... 152
November 28, 1677 The Nuptial Dish ..... 153
November 30, 1677 The Way of the East ..... 153
**CHAPTER 27** ..... **156**
December 1, 1677 A Call to the Holy Tabernacle* ..... 156
December 2, 1677 The New Tongue* ..... 156
December 3, 1677 The Great and Mighty Potentate* ..... 156
December 4, 1677 The Virgin Garment* ..... 156
December 6, 1677 The Entrance of Caleb and Joshua into the Land of Beulah ..... 157
December 7, 1677 The Cessation and the Return of Miracles ..... 158
December 8, 1677 Dressing and Trimming* ..... 159
December 9, 1677 The Overthrow of Sisera, and the Song of Deborah ..... 159
**CHAPTER 28** ..... **162**
December 11, 1677 The Conflict of Fire and Water: The Enclosed Rock ..... 162
December 12, 1677 Interpretation of the Enclosed Rock* ..... 162
December 13, 1677 The Engrafted Word* ..... 163
December 14, 1677 The Jasper Circle ..... 163
December 16, 1677 Attending the Holy Altar* ..... 164
December 18, 1677 Interpretation of the Former Vision ..... 164
December 20, 1677 The Golden Tree of Beulah ..... 164
December 21, 1677 Transmuting Fruit* ..... 165
December 22, 1677 The Hand-Writing ..... 165
December 23, 1677 The Blessing of Increase* ..... 166
December 24, 1677 The Bemoaning of Ephraim* ..... 166
December 25, 1677 Dressing and Trimming* ..... 166
December 26, 1677 The Clothing of Power* ..... 166
December 29, 1677 A Caution against Prophets of Judgment ..... 167
December 30, 1677 The Daily Expectation not Frustrated ..... 167
**CHAPTER 29 THE CONCLUSION** ..... **168**
**CHAPTER 30 POSTSCRIPT: "ANOTHER" GENEALOGY** ..... **169**
**ADVERTISEMENT: A LIST OF JANE LEAD BOOKS** ..... **171**

# Preface
# by
# Francis Lee

[2F P:1] §.In this Second Volume of the *Diary* which is here presented, there are many things very considerable, relating to the several progresses of a Life of *faith*, with various manuductions to this Mystic and Supersensual state, recorded within the space of one year; wherein this Author was most plentifully visited of God. Much information is given concerning the *Paradisiacal*, the *Angelical*, and the *Divine* life, in the gradual augmentation and operation of the Holy Seed of Faith within the soul; many things concerning the *Bank* of *Wisdom*, with her Laws of *Merchandise*, which besides an interior, carry also an exterior sense, that will be made good to her children; many things respecting the establishment of a Royal Order of the *Melchizedek Priesthood* upon the Earth, with the return of Prophecy and Miracles, in a more extraordinary and fixed manner than ever before.

[2F P:2] §.They are all great and momentous matters which are here delivered, concerning both the Church of Christ in general, and each member thereof in particular. Neither are they such as are at a distance, but such as are near at hand, and at the very door; they beginning already to be accomplished in some persons in divers countries, even almost of all ranks, constitutions, and manners of living; whereof much could be said. And if they be not only great, but also uncommon and strange, though it cannot be expected that they should easily be received; yet it may, that they should at least be admitted to a fair hearing and candid examination, as to the pretenses which are made.

[2F P:3] Whatever also the method of delivering them down may be, and how liable so ever to the exceptions of the eloquent and the learned, this will not be a prejudicate strong enough to make the wise and prudent in heart throw away a rich treasure that may be put into their hands, because of the many coverings that may be put upon it. And if the matters be of the greatest consequence, though they be couched for the most part under certain parables, similitudes, and visional ideas, it is not at all doubted but that many will be found who may hereby be stirred up to dive into and comprehend what others will slight and despise, as seeing nothing more in it than an enthusiastic jargon of words. But let the thoughts of these be never so mean, it is certain to me that *Wisdom will be justified of her Children:* and that her Children are children indeed: children in the eyes of the world, in their own eyes, and in the eyes of God.

[2F P:4] It is no wonder then that the world despises them, laughs at their weakness, and, with a sort of disdain, pities their folly. It has been so from the days of Christ and of His holy Apostles: and it is no new thing for the *Mystic Wisdom* of God to be accounted *foolishness*, and those that are led by an higher Spirit than that of this world, to be termed *mad* or even possessed with a *devil.* But if the world knows them not, a Greater than the world does know them. Hear then, O little ones, and rejoice! Hear also O despisers, and mourn. For a *Glorious Kingdom* and a *Beautiful Crown*, even the Crown of *Philadelphia*, is now set before you both. Take heed that you neglect not so great an offer, and deride not those who do believe, and consequently accept it. If so, the evil Day of Temptation, that is to try the whole earth, will overtake you suddenly: and then will you be constrained to confess how these whom we counted mad, are numbered among the Children of God: and how their lot is

fallen among the redeemed out of the earth, who stand upon the Mount of *Sion,* with Crowns and Palms in their hands, following the Lamb.

[2F P:5] §.The *Ascending Steps* to this Mount you will find here so described, as could only be by such as have gone up by them; in conformity with that process of the regeneration, and the transformation, which has been expressed in *The Ascension-Ladder Sent Down,*[1] that was in the year 1681 set forth by the Author; and in the year 1694 translated into *High Dutch,* and soon after that into *Low Dutch.* Wherein is at large declared how the actions and passages of our Blessed Lord in the way to Glorification, are not only representative and imputative as to their meritoriousness or efficacy, but are also operative of the same in the members of His Mystical Body. These must also pass through *Death* and the *Resurrection* before they can *Ascend* and be *Glorified* with Him in the Kingdom of *Mount Sion,* or of the *New Jerusalem.*

[2F P:6] Let us then, as many as love the Lord Jesus and His Appearance, behold the *Cloud now breaking,* wherein He will descend into us, in like manner as He ascended, and having carried us through the Cross, will lead us back into *Paradise* from where we came out, by restoring again the bright and pure Image of God, through His all-virtual Resurrection. From there He will conduct us still higher and higher, as we shall herewith by Him be *adorned,* into those superior states of Glorification, in the heavens above *Paradise;* where He sits as at the right hand of the Father, in the fullness of majesty and glory.

[2F P:7] From there He will also personally Descend, to judge the world according to righteousness and truth [or equity], when He shall have thus prepared a Body of Saints made like unto Him, in the midst of whom He may pitch His Glorious Tabernacle. Out of which His edicts will be sent, as on the wings of the lightning, to the uttermost ends of the Earth, by flying Angels who have lived in bodies of mortality, but shall have then received the Immortal Crown and the Incorruptible Name. O blessed, thrice blessed are all those who through that faith that in these sheets is described, are made partakers of this First Resurrection, and of the high immunities and prerogatives of the Firstborn.

### Who Will Believe Our Report?

[2F P:8] §.But who is sufficient for these things? And it may now again be said, Alas! *Who has believed our report?* We are accounted as liars all the day long for your sake, O God of Truth. Alas! Who will believe that you have remembered your Promises of old, which all your Holy Prophets have repeated from your mouth: O Lord most holy, O Lord, most true? Or that you have spoken unto us out of the Cloudy Pillar, and communed with us in the silence of our hearts? How have you made us to bear your reproach, O God, and to be in the eyes of many, and even of our brethren (as we still esteem them), as the *dung* of the earth, and as the *offscouring* of all the present forms of religion; because we have believed your Word, and have listened to your voice, calling unto us in the Evening of this Sixth Day? Why do you deal thus with us, O Lord our God?

### The Lord's Reply

[2F P:9] Surely you answer us: *Why are you so jealous of My honor, as if the times were not in My Hand, and the Seasons ordained in My counsel? Arise: and hold not your peace, though you are but the Offscouring of the Earth, and lie as among the pots. Blow the trumpet; and cease not till I shall appear. Suffer me to plead my own cause, and at my own time. Remember my servant* John, *whom I sent to prepare my way: how he wrought not any mighty deed, yet was found faithful in his ministra-*

1 Published as *The Heavenly Cloud Now Breaking.*

*tion, and prevailed abundantly. Think not that I am slack in performing my promises of destroying the Adversary, that* Man of Sin, *by the Ghostly and Miraculous Powers going out of My Mouth as Streams of Fire; for all my Promises are at hand to be fulfilled. Hold fast unto the end, and rejoice greatly that you are counted worthy to suffer shame for My Name.*

### Progressive Revelation

[2F P:10] §.Therefore we shall not be solicitous of what may be said or thought of us by any. Our part is defensive, not offensive: and so only but with respect to the honor of God, and the immutable truth of His Word. And therefore it will be incumbent on those who would oppose us, to show the invalidity of that charter which we pretend to have from the mouth of Christ Himself, or to produce but any one testimony, either out of the Old or New Testament (which they themselves dare to rely on), for the final cessation of revelation and prophecy in the Church of God, either with the Apostles, or shortly after, or even after several centuries of years, as the more moderate and learned do assert; or else to show that what we do possess to have thus learned, when rightly understood, is clearly contrary to what is contained in the Law or in the Gospel, or to something delivered by the holy Prophets or Apostles: Either of which, if these gentlemen can prove, they will do much towards the sapping and overturning the whole foundation upon which we stand. But till this shall be done, all this other labor will be but in vain: and instead of retarding, will but serve more vigorously to promote the work that is undertaken and carried on by some that are of a *Nehemiah*-Spirit, and not to be daunted with big and terrifying words.

### Important Considerations for Doubters

[2F P:11] §.If then there are any dissatisfied as to the contents of this Volume, or of the former or other writings printed of this Author; and if their dissatisfaction is out of a zeal for God, and truth of religion: let them consider with cool and sedate thoughts whether there is not as good a ground in Scripture for the expectation and belief of such a Kingdom of Christ to come (as is herein expressed, and said to be revealed by the powers of the Holy Ghost), as there is for many of the opinions in religion which they do receive, and articles which they have subscribed to.

[2F P:12] Let them consider what is the Sanctification of the Divine Name on Earth, to be daily prayed for, and therefore to be believed in; what is the coming of the Kingdom of our God on Earth; and what is the doing of His will on Earth, in like manner to be prayed for and believed in to the very same degree that it is in Heaven; that is both with the same *oneness* of Spirit, the same perfection of *purity*, and the same *universality* of extent; with respect first to the Name of the Father to be sanctified, by such as shall have received the Seal of the Adoption of Children; secondly, to the Kingdom to be manifested, which must be in the power of the Father; and thirdly, the will to be performed, which must be by the Holy Ghost, ministering in the inward sanctuary which He fills.

[2F P:13] Let them consider what other systems say as to these matters: and then let them examine what a system may be drawn out of this Book, when well digested and fully comprehended; After which let that which is drawn from here be compared with those, and both together be compared with the sacred Scriptures, taken in their easy, plain, and natural sense, without running to, or depending upon the glosses, interpretations, or comments of any whatever.

[2F P:14] Let them further consider whether in these Scriptures are the least footsteps to be found for such a prevailing opinion, as is at this day grown in a manner universal amongst us: that the Prophetical and Miraculous Gifts of the Spirit were designed by Christ only for the establishment and

foundation of His Church, and not for its building up, and perfection in the work of the ministry, till all should be brought hereby into the unity of the faith, and the knowledge—not only of the Mysteries of Religion, but a full conformity to the Stature of Christ, in the most perfect and stable Model of it: concerning which much is spoken, both here and in the *Message to the Philadelphian Society.*

### Mystical and Parabolic Meanings

[2F P:15] §.It is to be confessed that there are indeed several things that will be apt to shock the readers at the first view, who have not had any such experiences in themselves: but chiefly through the strangeness of this Parabolic and Mystical way of writing, which is fallen under as great a disrepute in this present refined age, as it was of esteem in the first ages of the church. But upon the most nice and accurate examination, these stumbling blocks will either all or for the most part molder away of themselves. And whereas it is generally objected against everyone that steps out of the vulgar and ordinary road, and speaks of any divine favors above what are common, that it all proceeds from the root of pride in them, variously transforming itself; you may be here assured that there is the most solid ground established, by what you shall read in these so peculiar memoirs, for the *humility* of the Cross; without making it to interfere with faith or hopes, or to impede the progress of any generous design for the good of this nation, of *Christendom*, and of the whole world. And nowhere better you may find what a vast distinction there is of a true and Christian humility, from a false and beggarly.

[2F P:16] Another thing that may recommend this, with the other Treatises of the same Author, is that there will not herein be found any vilifying or reproaching of the sacred customs among Christians, any lessening or derogating from any institutions, either of Christ or of His Apostles, as is usual unto some: but a just deference to the truth of the history as well as of the Divine Mystery. Here is nothing against the ordinances of the Gospel, when used in Spirit and in Truth; nothing against the giving honor to whom honor is due; and nothing against the unity of the body of the Church under Christ, the only supreme and universal Bishop, and His Holy Spirit. For as much as nothing is asserted for the *setting up of any new sect or church:* but an encouragement is only given, for the waiting purely in the unity of this Spirit, with prayers and supplications, that such an holy *catholic*[2] church may arise upon the earth; whereof Christ can say, *My dove, my undefiled is one*, and that it is *one Spirit* with Himself.

### Concerning Charity

[2F P:17] Wherefore also there can be no objection as to any uncharitableness in this Author, who is more blamed for the height of charity, as stretching it too far, than for the want of it, or contracting it. But that exact and beautiful representation of the design and import of our Savior's doctrine, which is herein delivered, will be sufficient probably to prefer the same to all the sober inquirers after truth: when they shall have thoroughly examined it, and compared it with those lame and imperfect accounts which are given by the writers of systems: and will be able to guard itself (when clearly apprehended) against all attacks, whether on the right hand or on the left.

### Ancient Truths Revived

[2F P:18] There are some ancient truths, conformable to the Gospel, and to the belief and practice of the Apostolic Church, which you may here find revived: and some not so generally lost, con-

---

**2** SDV Note: Jane Lead's use of the word "catholic" is according to the most genuine sense and utmost latitude of the word, meaning "universal," not the Roman Catholic Church. See 60P 5, 20, 23, 24, 26; 2M 17.

firmed. What is said concerning the Incarnation and Satisfaction of Christ, the Resurrection of the Body, Christian Perfection, and the Kingdom of God in the restitution of Depraved Nature, is so deep and so fundamental; and withal so agreeable with that high veneration which every Christian ought to have for the Holy Scriptures, as may reward the worthy and patient inquirer: besides many other great and useful mysteries unfolded, and notions neither wild or barbarous propounded, but worthy of acceptation by all Christians, and all men, for the humiliation of man, the exaltation of God, and the promulgation of the Gospel of His Kingdom: to discover more deeply our own weakness and unworthiness, and to infuse into us a great charity for others, condescension and compassion towards all that bear the same image and nature with ourselves, and towards the whole groaning creation.

[2F P:19] §.If any one of which ends be obtained, by what is here published, through the Divine Blessing upon it, then, O Reader who reaps this benefit, you have reason to thank: but if otherwise, take heed how you condemn.

*Your brother and servant in the Lord Jesus,*

TIMOTHEUS[3]

*August* 5, 1697

[3] SDV Note: "Timotheus" aka Francis Lee.

# The Epistle of the Author

*To the Inquiring and Impartial Readers*

[2F E:1] §.Whereas it has been the royal gift of God's grace to visit the lowly with the day-break of His light, by unsealing the cabinet where the Precious Jewels and Treasure of the immense goodness have laid hidden; I am under an obligation to discharge my trust and stewardship herein: this that is here published—not having been given for a private use, but for an *universal* advance into deeper and higher *manifestations* of the mind of God. It was foreseen that they should have their acceptation and improvement in this age and period, by many that shall be fitly qualified for their entertainment; who are found walking in the humble Valley of the Lilies. These cannot relish or savor anything but what flows from the living streams that proceed from the very Root and Head-Lily, who will be their light and bright covering; for this is the Day for increase and multiplication of the Sharon-Glory. Who then would refuse to be among this Number, where the Blessed Lord Himself will appear, and in the midst of them walk and feed; satiating them to that fullness, that there shall be no more thirst or drought? For there is a River that flows from the Godhead, which will make every plant to bud, flourish, and bring forth fruit like unto apples of gold: that is, solidly and substantially good.

[2F E:2] §.Much of this kind and nature you may here find discoursed of, according to what was in some degree known and experienced, by one who once knew herself to be as a wild olive cumbering the ground, or as a fruitless shrub bearing only prickly thorns. Out of this uneasy state the kindness and love of God appeared, to bring me forth when I was about the age of eighteen, my first passage being through most terrible conflicts. For some years I walked through the Valley of *Achor,* and through the bitter Dale of *Baca:* till about the year 1660, being ten years afterward, a *door of hope* was opened, and Floods of Refreshing came into me, with some immediate dictates that followed me from the Holy Unction, that taught me all things that were necessary for me; albeit I did not hereupon forsake the outward ministry, but I still waited, and sought out such as I judged to come nearest to the Apostolic Practice.

[2F E:3] So keeping on my course outwardly, with a watchful waiting interiorly, I must own and confess to the glory of the Spirit's peculiar ministration, that I found such deeps broken up in the center of my own soul, that opened that Divine Wisdom and understanding, relating to the knowledge of God, *Christ,* and *myself,* as I could not anywhere else meet withal; Which still engaged me as a weaned child to be, that I might no longer suck from the breast of this worldly principle, or draw water from any other fountain than that which (through rich grace) I had already tasted of. For this Scripture always much followed me: *Whom shall He teach knowledge, and make to understand doctrine, but the weaned from the milk, and her that is drawn from the breasts?* Which observing and obeying, the Word was accordingly made good to me. For the Springs thus opening, did still arise to higher degrees. Though sometimes through the multiplicity of concerns, wherein I was circumstantiated, they would be discolored, and even mudded; which made me seek after great abstraction and solitariness: that I might attend upon these Springs, to keep them pure and clear.

[2F E:4] §.So that when God cast my lot to be a widow, which was in the year *1670,* this change, bringing me first into manifold trials, drove me into a more intimate union with my Eternal Spiritual Husband, upon whose care I wholly cast myself. And then I resolved to make the choice of *Anna,* to wait in the Temple of the Lord day and night; and to be a *widow indeed,* after I had been the wife of a pious husband about twenty-five years. For after his decease, I ceased as much as possible from all business and care, setting myself free by all means for the *heavenly calling* only; wherein I found great pleasure and delight, so as no worldly promotions or advantages (though offered for my temptation) could move me from it, or withdraw me from a dedicated and devoted life. Which I have till this day pursued and continued in, and shall so do, till I shall have finished my course, in the hopes of entrance into the triumphant joy of my Lord.

[2F E:5] §.Thus O worthy reader, I have given you a brief narrative of the beginning and progress of my New-Born Life, which is elsewhere more enlarged upon in a particular treatise.**4** But this may suffice for an introduction into the following volume of my *Journal,* wherein as in a Glass you may see what leadings I have been under. Here you may read the express manner and method of the Spirit's communications, in which I can soberly avouch, that I myself was wholly *passive,* and the Spirit altogether *active*. For my creaturely being was so bounded up as nothing to know or contribute hereunto; all being laid in silence while God was to arise and speak forth Himself through the earthen and empty vessel; for the sake of which, let no contempt or slight be poured out: For it is what God in His *wisdom* did reserve, to bring forth for the use and service of as many as are ordained to receive and take hold of these Divine Mysteries: for improvement and growth to all those degrees of perfection, which are herein made mention of.

[2F E:6] Surely for this end *Wisdom's* Book of Secrets was opened, that by this divine learning, her Children might be brought up and made meet and ready for their Bridegroom the Lamb. For undoubtedly the Day hereof draws near, when these writings, having been kept in obscurity these twenty years (as taken by me for private memorandums, as they were given day by day), are now brought out into the light, by a strange and unexpected hand, being a person of great piety and worth; whose fame and renown shall outlive all writings of time; and who perpetually shall wear *Love's* Diadem and Crown.

[2F E:7] §.I have no more now but to beseech and entreat those to whom these sacred truths shall come to be perused; that as they would reap benefit and advantage from them, they might fear and dread to pass any judgment or censures in a gain-saying way to the Spirit, the opener of them. And let me humbly give this advice: that the full-grown and highly advanced in all rational learning and wisdom, and in all great and honorable acquirements, become as children, committing themselves to *Wisdom* their true Mother: that they may be brought up at her feet; which they will find to turn to a thousand-fold better account than all they have ever before learned. For I have made it my observation that the rashness of many spirits, in condemning what they are absolute strangers unto, has shut the *Gate of Wisdom* upon them.

[2F E:8] Therefore, O all that would be growing plants under the shadow of *Christ* the Blessed Vine, accept this caution from your little and low fellow member: That you refuse not to seek and draw from the Royal Grape continually, the juice whereof is pure *Spirit,* to strengthen you with the Balsam of Life; All this the child-like spirit will come to taste and know. And by obeying these rules and manuductions, you will have occasion to adore, bless, and magnify what of the Spirit of God

**4** *A Fountain of Gardens, Vol. 1.*

shall hereunto move and drive you. For the *Commission* is already gone forth to the Angelical Messengers, that are constrained to sound the Horn of Salvation, which is filled with this *Ghostly Oil:* which will so abundantly flow, as to heal all the divisions and controversies, whereby the several parties do wound each other.

[2F E:9] Who among these Shepherds would not then be ambitious, to hold out the Love Golden Crook, to fetch in the torn, rent, and scattered sheep and lambs into Christ their princely Shepherd's Fold; where they may quietly lie down in those refreshing pastures, that spring again as fast as they are fed upon? The Door here for entrance stands open: Let none shut it upon themselves. For a thousand times thousands of blessings are pronounced upon the publishers and promoters of this glorious ministration of the *Spirit.* And there is now a cry sounding from the Heavens unto all preachers and teachers, of all ranks and degrees, and whatever titles and denominations they bear: that they agree together in pure unity and harmony, to declare and hold forth the Everlasting Testimony of the Spirit of *Jesus,* from the Springing Unction, that will be the sealing mark of the *Apostolic* Day that is now again to be revived. For which evermore prays she, who in incessant travel is, till all this shall be accomplished,

*J. Lead*

July 29, 1697

**SDV Note: Since many of Mrs. Lead's journal entries were untitled, this Editor created them with words or phrases taken directly from those entries, and are identified with an asterisk (*). Section Headings were also added by this Editor.**

# Chapter 1

## A Commemoration on New-Year's Day

### JANUARY 1, 1677
### WISDOM'S MERCHANDIZE

[2F 1:1] §.About the middle of the night, being called out in prayer, I felt a mighty throng of Invisible Powers that filled me, as if I had put on the Immortal Vehicle for the Sacred Trinity to act in, with Love and joy-powers, during sometime upon me with great ravishing sweets. In the morning I was greeted by this Word: When will you begin to draw out some part of that stock which you have trusted with Him, who is so ready with you to account? The Great and Mighty One has charged Himself with a debt unto you, by all and every act of faith, which at any time had purely flown out from either, joining hereunto in one Spirit, as co-partners in spiritual things. Then was it further opened unto me that we had been careless, in that we had neglected in not keeping our accounts clear, both in relation to the Lord, and to ourselves.

[2F 1:2] First as to the Talent and Gift entrusted with us, as a provision bestowed upon us from our Father to traffic withal, during such a time as might bring the intended increase into effect. Now the Spirit who keeps the heavenly records said unto me, Search and see, and be well advised what has been freely given from your God to you; for you are debtors to His Grace for a New Adoption, who has again begotten you not only to the hope, but to the real possession of that which belongs unto children: though till now you have not understood the royalty of your own beings, nor yet the greatness of your strength and might. For be assured, upon this New Creation score, in which you now are considered, thereto belongs *Sion's* rich provision. Now then, it is but meet as dear and grateful children to keep your accounts clear, and to charge yourselves with so much stock of Life and Spirit as you have received. It must be called out for, and nothing of this Treasury must lie idle or useless: but all is still expected upon the increase, till you come to be a Numerous Seed.

[2F 1:3] In the second place, said the Spirit, consider and call over what you have adventured, and returned back into that Great City, wherefrom the rich exchange of spiritual goods is to be produced. Know that for your great comfort, you have a faithful and able Correspondent in this high and heavenly country; that you may fully assure yourselves of great gain in spirituals, according to the kind of what the high region affords: which is of that unknown and excellent value, as these worldly inhabitants will not care to purchase, because they have no judgment of such invisible Mystical Treasury. But to you who are only for the heavenly merchandize, more bills of store shall yet be given forth. Fear not to make fresh charges upon that Great Trustee, who commands all in Wisdom's vast bank. Nothing is more pleasing than to make out what rests due unto you, upon the Spirit's births account.

[2F 1:4] Little have you examined how matters and things of this nature stand between God and you: who thinks it no impeachment to His sovereign greatness, to be indebted unto such as have returned lading back again on faith's bottom—all which has been committed in trust with this charge:

To traffic with no other; for it would be an evil to spend your corn, wine, and oil upon the fine trimmed Harlot; which yet being so high in appearance, is more than half divided in the true Love's property. Therefore be wise for yourselves, and scatter not, till you have reaped and got your own crop in. Listen and observe this weighty rule, to carry all this high spiritual commerce in the hiddenness of the Eternal Spirit. There are but few in this professing age that understand the rate of that Precious Stone that you are adventurers for, with all those other celestial ornaments; for to bring in against the Bridal Day; which will not be solemnized with the Lamb, till you have fetched in all your eternal revenue. Therefore be not afraid to urge, and to account with your God, for what the Spirit of Faith has sent out, for bringing in that which is of the greatest weight and consideration that has been known, since the world of creatures has been in existence.

## JANUARY 7, 1677
## THE TRUE MYSTICAL PASSOVER*

[2F 1:5] §.This night I found the Life-Center much open, and the Oracle for to sound clear, and somewhat to talk with me from the heavenly sphere. The sum of which was to persuade unto a decrease from all that low activity and concern about things and matters terrestrial. For as I was mourning in the feeling sense of that Dark Stone, weighing the superior part down upon every slight occasion ministered from this principle; which I found in my very taste to be as brinish salt waters, that fretted, and eat upon that interior, vigorous part of the Spirit, so enfeebling it as its force was evidently felt to be abated, until the *Shiloh*-spring opened again; which washed up the Healing Stone, which put all into place and order, which by the Corrupter was made diseased.

[2F 1:6] Then this Word spoke to me, Do you think to recover immorality of life, with that Inheritor who belongs unto it, while there is a divided eye and ear, which are still open to see and hear all those charming sensualities, which plead for this earthly kingdom, and engage you still here to be traffickers, from which you are prohibited by Mount-*Sion* Laws? Is not Wisdom's Merchandize more worthy to be all in your eye, who will assuredly find you daily employed, as to work off yourselves from all those habits and customs, as have been brought in traditionally from the fall? From which you are redeemed, as you feed upon the true Mystical Passover, which will forestall the earthly life, giving way to that Pure Thing, which you feel stirring from the Light Region. This has great sufficiency to clear that evil staining nature, from out of which, strange essences so turbulently arise, to annoy and disturb that which would be free from all sin's casualties, reigning in the princely Spirit of what will become the absolute King of Righteousness; Who has already set a foot upon your heavens and earth for this very end, that His Throne and Dominion might be so fixed within the circumfering powers of your wills, that so time may be swallowed up, from an entire act going forth from this sovereignty: which in an intrinsic way will bring all into subjection that is within.

[2F 1:7] He will first begin with the judgment, for cleansing the floor. Make but the inside clean and pure, then power will soon be known and understood, whereby a Body suitable to such a Spirit, may come to be perfectly framed. As thus if the pith of a tree by its life be extensive, it makes the bark through which it rises fresh, fruitful, and beautiful; that so you may easily conclude that a life-sap is veiled under the bark. But it is not perceivable, till it shoots forth itself, getting through every branch and twig. Even so it is in you, considered as trees of a new plantation, in whom the Spirit rises, as an essential Pith of Life, and distributes itself through every property, permitting nothing to mingle with it, that should abate its vigorous penetration, for to assimilate and qualify the very outward bark or body into a lustrous appearance and palpable fruitfulness.

[2F 1:8] The meaning of the Spirit as to fruitfulness is not only the First and Second Birth-degrees of Regeneration, and here to stop: as in measures of love, joy, faith, hope, meekness and patience—which are the firstfruits of the Spirit. But hereunto are to be added fruits yet more super-eminent as the product of these; when so ripened, as each one sheds their seed into the pure heart, whereinto the Blood of the New-Testament is poured in. From here now it is, said the Living Word, that a spiritual body will be driven forth, all in the heavenly form, acting forth in another kind of fruitfulness than the foregoing. As thus a terrestrial creature works and produces acts answerable to his animal rational life, which may be justifiable before men: and nothing beyond his life-sphere is expected. But now from a new-made creature that derives a birth so high, as nothing less than God's own likeness is to be evidenced in it; this must needs work like itself in various powers, of another sort of miraculous fruitfulness, by which Jesus through this Ghostly Spirit and Body is glorified.

## JANUARY 12, 1677
## THE PARABLE OF THE TWO CHILDREN: OR, THE TWO HAIRY GOATS*

[2F 1:9] §.In the night there was presented unto me two forms very displeasing to my eye, being clothed with a hairy goat's skin, where spots and botches did appear so unlovely, as I was much disgusted at the sight of them. But while I as viewing them, first the one rent this outward deformity in two; and likewise the other, following the example of the first, did also rend open. And I beheld two sweet amiable children came forth from within this deformed figure; but at first sight they were as stillborn babes. I took up one and it soon revived with all motions of life; and answerably the same vigorous spirit manifested itself in the other, so as I saw them able to stand upon their legs. And so the vision shut up in the formality of it, and opened itself in the spirituality, as I thereupon waited.

[2F 1:10] After a little season the Spirit thus spoke within me: What have you seen in these two strange pieces of deformity, but a rough and unclean vestment that is so ignominious. Behold, and see your own vile bodies thus portrayed out, while you bear those uncomely shapes; which as a veil shall rend away, that so the truly begotten of the Ghostly Body may appear, who is as those innocent and all-beautiful babes, that have been shut up under a covert, as in a twofold body. As first, that thick and cloudy smothering *Body of Sin*. Secondly, the very visible form of corporeity, which is but a disgraceful image, being the product of a degenerate spirit—which with the other must be put off. For corruptible humanity in its fleshly figure is too mean for the high birth degree of the Eternal Spirit: though it may be suffered for a time as a disguised clothing, till that which is born without sin is strong enough to break through the rough human and animal beast, that was ever designed for a sacrifice: that so all brought in by the fall might come to be anatomized; that in the room thereof another body might rise—not only like which was in *Paradise*—but one degree yet higher, according as your Jesus has assumed a more transparent body.

[2F 1:11] As these things were plainly discoursed to my Spirit, an objection arose: *How this twofold body should come to be so demolished, while we live in this visible sphere, as no more to appear in its sinful frailty or elementary ponderosity?* Having not heard or seen anyone that has yet so put off the vile body, though hereunto incited, and prophesied of, that such a change is to come upon the inward and outward man, but it has not yet happened in this orb. Nay, our Lord Jesus himself did not alter His human figure to endure, till He had ascended out of all mortal sight. And though after His crucifixion He did appear and disappear at pleasure, yet He always assumed a *body* like unto ours, as bearable to the view of those whom He delighted to show Himself unto, in and after His resurrection. Therefore though He had no Body of Sin to put off, yet He had a body of mortality, which was not

put off to the human eye, till He gave up the ghost of His animal life upon the Cross: All which strengthening the argument, that our corporeity hardly in this region, admits of such a transformation, as thereby to pass out by and through a sublime airy body, in and among the high enthroned powers and dignities resident in the *New Jerusalem.*

[2F 1:12] This doubt lay much upon my spirit, importuning a clear resolve, that the mind of my God herein might be expressly revealed through an immediate dictate, which thus far I obtained: O soul, it is true there has been no one precedent that has so wrought out the very originality of all impurity, as to assume a body of that celestial clarity, as therein to walk up and down among mortals—yet that makes not against the possibility hereof. For there is that which is to come that never yet was in existence, which will steal upon the world by degrees, as in the successive ages. One miraculous thing or another will be produced, which was not before. For this very unbelief has sealed up the mighty birth-working power, which still cries, *How can such transmutations be, as to come forth another spirit, actuating itself in a suitable body?* Ah, what doubts and debates have there been about it? So that age upon age has seen nothing of the resurrection-state, because of fear to destroy the *Body of Sin*—which is the first alteration that must be made before the outward body can be translated.

[2F 1:13] And know this further: Whoever attains to the one has power and all-sufficiency for the other, as they shall see it expedient to metamorphose their gross corporeity. And though your Jesus did not alter His human shape into any visible body of glory, it was not through any deficiency that He could not do it: But it was His pleasure that He would not do it; who knew His times and seasons, when and for what ends such transfigurations were needful: He coming into this world upon suffering account, that thereby conquering He might have all power to convey such a Spirit, as might form to itself such a proportionable body, for all such as give themselves to be made like unto Him, as He is now in a glorified state.

[2F 1:14] But your further objection is: *That if possibly you would attain hereunto, this world would be no fit principle for such transparent spirits and bodies to live in.* The inhabitants here could neither bear your transparency, nor you their gross corporeity, attended traditionally with all evil of sin, in some more refined, in others visibly lascivious, running into all excess, from which the true eagle-body will mount away. But understand that while you have a work and service of God to do here in this principle, you will not lack the fence of a spiritual body, to go in and out, to meet the Sacred *Trinity* in the Serene Principle: As *Moses* did, when he talked immediately with God, was then put into a shining body, that was not known or understood, which was laid aside as a garment for that purpose, that so he might speak with the Most Holy. But as soon as he came out from that Holy Place and heavenly parlay, he then put on that form in which he might be known of the lower orb.

[2F 1:15] Think it not incredible that this and much more is again to be done; as your Jesus often changed His body, though it was not known to the vulgar eye. Doubt not that such wonderful sufficiency will display itself from the pure contaction of the Sapphire Body. Therefore proceed to keep among the Immaculate and Just Ones, according to that present transferring power; which if complied withal, will produce a change internally, till a body be assumed invisibly, that shall rend the outward temple-veil. Then the Ark of the Living Testimony shall be known, read, and understood—yet by none but the Disciplehood. As your Lord only appeared to His own in His risen body, so shall it be when you are so risen, as to descend from the Heavenly Sphere.

# Chapter 2

## JANUARY 13, 1677
## THE PRIESTLY ROBE OF THE NEW BODY*

[2F 2:1] §.After this conference and satisfying resolve, as to the matter of my doubt, this Word was further spoken unto me through the Holy Oracle: That all those ceremonial ornaments, which the Priests were to be clothed withal, were to illustrate and set forth the most glorious transfiguration that was required, in that near approach and ministering service, in all the Tabernacle-worship, wherein we come to bow ourselves before the Most High. Therefore it was asked me, how did I think it was possible to see the glorified person of my Jesus, till I had put on the Priestly Robe of a New Body, He being now ascended into the Most Holy: waiting there till the whole Priesthood, called and anointed to be of the same order with Himself, do enter upon the same terms; having offered up in sacrifice the vile reproachful Body of the Flesh, through the same Eternal Spirit, by which your Jesus offered up His body visibly: as by a violent death—so yours by a voluntary Mystical Transformation, working invisibly.

[2F 2:2] Then what a Most Holy *Melchizedek*-Spirit will you pass, into the Heavenly Place withal, to effect in the True Eternal Tabernacle: where the unchangeable Priesthood is known in all the celestial orders, for the accomplishing of those superior services required in that Most Holy Place: in which the pure offerings celebrated, will be no more grievous, nor tedious, because a Priestly Body is prepared, to hallow and sanctify incessantly the great name of *Jehovah*, and to proclaim in mighty trumpet-sounds to the ends of the Earth, that the Kingly Priesthood is come, with all the Tabernacle-Furniture revealed, which has been concealed in *Mount Sion:* only types and shadows have till now been manifested. But now the real thing itself shall be brought to pass in them, who can hold out the sanctuary profession, without turning aside or waving, observing still their *Nazaritical* dedication.

[2F 2:3] Then the New Covenant will be confirmed upon you: that there will need no more offering for sin, for a New Heart with the Law of the Spirit-written in the heart, as there will be no more a departing from the mind of the Anointing. For by this Fiery Law proceeding, the Law of Sin within the members, wherever stirring, will hereby be consumed. For it is no more a weak literal precept that is now given forth; But the very Law-Giver writes and engraves Himself as an endless power of life, to obliterate and make void the Law of Sin and Death—which to no other would ever have given place. This is the foundation-work, which the Spirit of your Jesus first sets about, to pull down and demolish that which would be so great an impediment and check to all this designed reformation. Now then let it be your joy, when you feel the Spirit of Burning is despoiling all of sin: for that will perfect all the Most Holy Priesthood.

## JANUARY 14, 1677
## THE MELCHIZEDEK PRIESTHOOD

[2F 2:4] Upon the opening of the High Order of the Melchizedek-Priesthood, wherein I perceived such a deep Mystery lay hid, as the Apostle himself had not fathomed: it was shown to me that it was of great use to know and understand who this *Melchizedek* was; because thereto we had great refer-

ence. For He had not only the denomination of a Priest to pronounce blessings, but a King to whom tribute was paid; for *Abraham* presented of the spoil that he had taken, and there titled him the great King of *Salem*: thus far the Scriptures give an account of Him. But it was further revealed to me that He was that *Alpha* and *Omega*, the Second Person, who had His existence from all Eternity, and was in a High Priestly Order from all the time of *Adam's* fall, and did officiate in the Heavenly Sanctuary, and real Tabernacle in the Heavens; Whereof *Moses* had a sight and pattern given him, to figure out according to the low capacity, which the Church in the Wilderness then stood in.

[2F 2:5] But this great *Melchizedek* incarnated Himself in flesh, that He might visibly make an offering thereof, to testify that an end must be to that weak, corruptible, and unprofitable state, by the crucifying what He had assumed, that so that mean and despicable image might forever be demolished; That the first perfect glorious Priesthood after the Order of *Melchizedek* might again rise, and be in full accomplishment, in the residue of the Anointed hereunto: who for this cause are putting off their vile body, that they might be counted worthy to follow their *Melchizedek*-King, where they shall not only pay their praise offerings, but receive there a most high and Priestly Portion which is an unknown, and vast spiritual income of riches, which shall be brought from all parts.

## JANUARY 14, 1677
## THE MARRIAGE OF THE LAMB REPRESENTED

[2F 2:6] §.In the forepart of the night, being newly fallen asleep, I saw the heavens as it were part and rend, and mighty commotions in it; the earthly inhabitants in great trouble, running up and down, as fearing some unexpected change was coming upon them, which awakened me. And there was immediately presented to my view, as breaking through a bright element, Two Glorified Bodies, of a bright beryl color, in such a wonderful portraiture, that excelled all I had formerly of this nature seen in vision; Upon which my eye kept fixed without any surprise or fear, and still it was brought nearer. The one seemed in a Manly Visage; and the other as a Woman very lovely in her countenance. Then soon after, two or three more broke forth, and joined themselves to them, as in like-glorified figures. This sight was so pleasing that I could not but pray, Oh that we might be added unto them! For it was said, Behold this is the Lamb and His Bride, which first I did see.

[2F 2:7] Oh this great vision had so mighty an influence upon my spirit, that it was grievous still to be confined in the Corporeal Body, only hourly waiting to see its redemption. But it was said, Abide patiently, till your salvation shall be fully wrought out. Then you shall swiftly be clothed with the self-same body, all spiritual bright and airy, as my Bride, to unite in one body with me. Then I replied, Ah my Lord, why must this translation be so earnestly sought, and still prolonged? It was again answered: It was so considerable a change, that could not be, without passing through many further degrees; For sin and mortality would not be so easily vanquished while we abide in this tempting region.

## JANUARY 15, 1677
## THE NUPTIAL CONJUNCTION*

[2F 2:8] §.This morning it was much upon my spirit, how to quicken our progress, so as to arrive to that Nuptial Conjunction, which opened unto me the heavens. The Spirit sent forth deep and strong invocations for the consummation of this High Matrimonial Unity, that so we might together display our Loves and joys to each other, in that spicy perfumed bed of the Celestial Orb. Oh, the echoes which I heard in me sound: the Spirit called to the Bride to descend down; the Bride called for the

Spirit to ascend. Thus cry upon cry did, as a pure cloudy incense, send out, which brought this answer down: Oh, you who are in the Betrothed Spirit, why may not the assurance hereof, yet a while stay your most eager and spiritual passions of Love, till such time as your Vessels of Clay be turned into the fine Ophir Gold, through the working forth of that Sapphire Stone that is formed in you. It shall work through all in its degrees, till it has brought you up to that Perfect Stature, as you may make challenge with holy boldness to the Marriage-state, according to that pleasant and glorious manifestation which you did see in the heavens; which was shown to you for this very end: that so you might see your own Nuptial Day solemnized; before the accomplishing of which, yet great commotions will be permitted, as you did see in the vision.

[2F 2:9] See first what is still left alive of your dying part that will mutiny. For the Sensitive Life cannot consent that you should be married away out of their known linage and country; therefore they will lie in wait to intercept all messages and Love-tokens from your *Immanuel,* to prevent the success of so great a wedlock change. Therefore I, the Spirit of your Lord, warn that you turn away from all self, and creaturely parley. The Serpent also will subtlety back with arguments in forms of flesh, that so you might grow cold in your Love, and slack in your faith. But spur forward, and faint not: for the Everlasting Gate is set open by sovereign command. The Trumpet daily sounds, to enter into Love's Holy Ground, where only the Friends of the Bridegroom shall attend you, at the Banqueting Feast of Bread and Wine. Now away, and draw from all the cursed things of *Jericho,* and you shall assuredly meet your *Melchizedek*-King, with a full cup of blessing. This receive as a faithful and true saying from the *Yea* and *Amen.*

## JANUARY 20, 1677
## THE SLUMBERING TRANCE*

[2F 2:10] §.About the morning-break, as I was contemplating upon the change of the body for Translation, a further confirmation was given, with joy and peace unutterable, in hope of this glory to be revealed: My spirit praying that we might obtain grace, in order to be admitted of the same order with our Great *Melchizedek.* This Word immediately sprang, saying: The way and manner for it has been most evidently set forth and plainly taught you, as my Spirit could demonstrate it unto you. You can find no surer footing than first to be found in the walk of Death. Trace it then so thoroughly, till you can see no more earth: yield up the utmost ends without any reserve. For no mingling state after death, but to celebrate all immaculate the Feast of Tabernacles within the Most Holy Place. Therefore fear not to pass through this valley. For I the Spirit of Truth will assuredly finish this Mystery, because you have applied your hearts to me, having sought Death as a treasury, trying all ways and means to expire out. But as a deadly enemy that loathes to be conquered, it still revives, which makes you suspect that you shall never get rid of this grand and Last Enemy, that it will still hang a weight, disgracing and separating from your High Priesthood. But seeing you have cast yourselves wholly upon me your Comforter, be advised in this matter.

[2F 2:11] Now then, know that I will cast you, with the free act of your own wills, into a *Slumbering Trance,* that so you shall gradually die away; as all sensitive operations shall be wonderfully suspended, which must be done actually through the disposing and yielding up the life of the corruptible body. That life must die, because of the habitual course of sin, after that way of dying of which it is written, *I am dead and crucified; yet I live through that life which swallows up mortality.* Even so likewise the time shall come when you shall reckon yourselves dead, and freed from the *Body of Sin,* when you shall lie passive and still in the sweet and pleasant Trance, as fled away from out of this principle, no more to be known or seen, but as in the heavenly form of a powerful body, to work the

mighty works of God your Father in. It is true: What eye has yet seen this? The ear has only heard hereof, but who has come to believe the possibility of such a transformation?

[2F 2:12] Oh but faith gives a mighty heave hereunto, now as it has been your cry: Who, and how shall you be delivered from the Body of Sin and Death, and get a thorough pass from death unto such a fluent vehicle; whereby you may be able to say, Neither heights nor depths, light or darkness, neither earth or air shall be able to separate you from the Love, nor yet from those immediate accesses into the heavenly places, as belonging to that Royal Priesthood? Truly it is your Father's pleasure to bring you hereunto, not only in the flight of your spirits without a body adjoining consonant thereunto, because a Naked Spirit cannot produce and effect such effects and acts, as a body adhering thereunto. Therefore see and believe it of necessity, to be turned into a sublime body, in which only you can be with your Jesus in glory, and thereof take, and bring thereby to declare, which whom you have been.

[2F 2:13] Come, you who are the blessed of the Lord, who have united with one accord: fall on hard and close this work. Continually give up yourselves, and Lo, I will break for you all the bands of sin and death, that so the pure Spirit, which even was at work in you, may assume its own body of spiritual ability, to pass and enter where nothing of corporeity can be admitted. Your Priestly Portion is reserved for such a time, when you shall come into the Most Holy of all: for then you will have boldness to make all your own demands.

## JANUARY 23, 1677
## THE HIGH PRIESTLY GARMENT*

[2F 2:14] §.In the sobriety of a wise and understanding Spirit, that shall be your advocate to plead in the Shining Face of a transmuted body; in which the Majesty of Glory will very well know you, and hear all you have to offer, by way of request; because you bear no more the Image, Mark, or Name of what is accursed from the Mountain of Holiness. The situation of the Great King is seen of none, till they have put on the High Priestly Garment, upon which is written the New Name that is given in the baptizing water of the Holy Ghost, who has sprinkled us from all consciousness of sin. Now then slack not, but drive forward; for this truly is the Mark that I your Death-Conqueror do set before you. For it would be my crown of rejoicing, to meet you as translated out of this gross and elementary state, which while you are ranging and puddling in, I cannot be so clearly seen, nor afford to give out those more eminent and choice things; because you are not yet separated from the Vile Body, that so you may be redeemed from all that is of a hurtful conversation.

[2F 2:15] For indeed I would wholly appropriate you for myself, who being in a Glorified State, must of necessity glorify you, before I can show myself in such a familiarity, as is so desirable. For when I was in the world, for the accomplishing of the State of Humiliation, then the human figure was proper, in order to unfold suitably the Mystery of the Most High, and to relate it as bearable in that age. But now as a Prince and Shepherd of a Glorified Fold, I sit in heavenly places, to call my own by Name, to pass away out of their dark cloudy bodies, and not to stay, till they fade away and fall down as houses of clay, as it has been till now universally. Because this superior change has not been believed in, nor the foundation by a thorough death been understood, or surely laid, whereupon the Rising Body that is to swallow up mortality has not been manifested. But now observe those deaths and life-rules, which have been set so evidently before you, and you may possibly be changed into such a vigorous spirit and body, as to pass through that Glassy Sea: which is so brickle, that whoever can stand upon it, are probationed indeed to enter into farther degrees of glory, all in light, to see the God of Light without any other medium. Ah Lord, even so let it be.

# Chapter 3

## JANUARY 25, 1677
## THE DEATH OF MOSES

[2F 3:1] §.Oh, from this I did see with what Bodies we must enter withal, into the Mystery that is on the other side of the Glassy Sea: For there the Thrones were shown me, that were placed for the Conquerors who could be able to say with their Jesus, I was dead and slain, but now life is rising evermore. Then also will follow the Keys of Death and Life, to open and shut Heaven and Hell, as the hand of the Spirit will. Thus having great and manifold discoveries of what was to be possessed after death, we came easily forward, to be reconciled to all the deep dimensions belonging there. For the Lord had dealt with us and carried it much after the manner as he did with *Moses*, who upon the Mount of Vision had shown unto us the New Heavens, with all their privileges and glories, also with the New Jerusalem, and King thereof. And though *Moses* was prohibited from entering into that which was but a shadow of what he really passed into by death's transmutation, yet God did him no wrong by all that, thereby to translate him out of the mortal principle, into that of duration: which he often had sights, gusts, and tastes of, while he was in the corporeal figure; and he enjoyed the image of good things to come, as he passed through the worldly sanctuary.

## JANUARY 26, 1677
## THE DEATH OF MOSES (CONT.)*

[2F 3:2] §.This Word came this morning fresh unto me, saying, Now that I have shown you what rewards the death-conquerors will have, will you not desire and most freely obey, as my servant *Moses* did, to go up and die on Mount *Nebo?* That is, take leave of this earthly congregation, and go apart from all that still would invite you to abide with them. For if you do not withdraw out of their sight, you will never be able to die voluntarily; while they see any strength, vigor, or force in your natural ability, as the beloved *Moses* had. They will be crying, *What need is there of such a dying, as no more to be seen or known by us, after the manner of what has been?* So that unless you follow this example to go apart, you will hardly die away quietly, but you will be disturbed to bring your life back again, so that it will be a lingering dying death. Therefore well consider this impeding thing.

[2F 3:3] And so that you might not be alone in a suffering dying state, I have provided one that will be a dying-mate with you, to support and strengthen each other—till the dissolution is finished. Then you may totally cast yourselves upon your dying beds, there waiting for the Hour of your Change. The utmost grievousness of it will be but as a Slumbering Trance, that will make you forget this principle, with all its good or evil properties. All things will be alike to you, being gathered to your own people in the land of light, where more transparent things will take up your minds, and satisfy your sights. There are certain measures and rules by which you may know whether or not your approaching end is near:

[2F 3:4] *First,* consider the years and date of your age. There is a set and appointed time for Spiritual Death as well as for the natural. The bounds thereof are determined, though few or rarely any have tasted this Spiritual Death, before their outward man has been broken by natural death. Yet

there have been some known and some unknown examples: as *Enoch, Moses,* and *Elias,* with the Lord of Life, who though He suffered death, yet rising in that body again, was with it for a certain time conversant in the Earth, to testify that another change was to pass thereupon. Otherwise He never could have stood upon the Sea of Glass, without being changed into another figure, meet for Mount *Sion* Light. More also have found this Translation, though happily concealed. But it is enough that you know by what means it may possibly be reached, through the serious disposing of yourselves into this dying state; making observation by self-examination, of those Signs and Marks, that you may certainly conclude that the time of your departure is at hand

[2F 3:5] *Secondly:* For the bounds and time, without all controversy the Body of Sin is old enough to die. It is not few, but many and evil have been its days, which have been spent unprofitably. Therefore that life is not to be prolonged, but to seek its cutting off, as an unprofitable member, with all that pertains to it: as the vile body which, through the Corrupt Principle entering in, changed the very form into the like Deformed Image—which being brought back again to a nullification, then the Eternal Life will spring, and set all in order, as to the very outward vehicle again.

[2F 3:6] The *third* symptom you are to take notice of is: How your life-pulse beats, weak or strong. That is, whether the life and vigor of the heart be much deadened and spiritless, to all whatever can be named, that has its root from this degenerated principle.

[2F 3:7] The *fourth* symptom: Do you feel your stomach and appetite fully gone, that you cannot digest any of the fruits that is brought forth by the sweat of the brow, and toil of the hands, all which was the product of the curse.

[2F 3:8] A *fifth* symptom: Nay more, try your selves, that to all which seems to carry a more refined excellency in it, are you able to distinguish it, as garnished only with somewhat out of *Paradise,* but mixed with the wild and sour vintage of this world, whether you feel real disgusts and loathing hereunto.

[2F 3:9] The *sixth* place is another palpable sign: The Life-Breath is much pent and stopped. The thick air and unsavory fumes of this worldly region have near stifled the very Life-Breath; so as it will be unbearable, finding nothing at all in this whole universe pleasant to you, because of your Spiritual Sickness, which presages death to be so near. Can you but now give real proof of such languishing symptoms, then you may hope and believe that a Glorified Translation is hereby working out, where nothing more that is uneasy shall be felt.

## JANUARY 27, 1677
## SOME MEANS TO THIS PERFECT DEATH

[2F 3:10] §.*First,* let your Bridegroom spirit you who are thus truly dying, and direct you wisely, to put your visible affairs into order, as only using them for a mere constrained necessity, during the time of your sick mortal state, always expecting that their date is wearing out. For a Transformed Body will hereof have no need.

[2F 3:11] §.*Secondly,* Then yet again, take this rule from your dear Comforter, who would have you finish all things, that may be in order to this accomplishment, of what may make perfect and entire, lacking nothing that may make comely.

[2F 3:12] §.The *third* place, There is another act as necessary to be performed as this: in passing away, and making a disposal, as your Last Will, of all that you possess in and from the spirit of this mutable region; that constitutes and gives forth to the Fallen Ones their several portions, by and through the Visible Constellations, that work incessantly in all the rational and sensitive faculties; as also from the subtle introduction of the Prince of Darkness, who thereby holds the life captive, that it cannot so easily come to its total decease. Therefore give up all. As they have proceeded from the earthly rudiments, let them inherit them as their own again. For the Spiritual Birth and Body that is to take place upon the remove of this, has more high graduated intellectuals and faculties supersensually engraved upon the mind, which will always generate from the crystal source of the Immense Being.

## JANUARY 28, 1677
## THE HOPE OF TRANSMUTATION*

[2F 3:13] §.This morning the Spirit gave this Word of counsel, as also for a caution, in and upon this great expectation: Beware of the Tempter in relation to the hope of Transmutation; who subtly stands ready here to mingle, who waits to see if you should hereby be exalted by any elevated aims that are not clear and justifiable in the eye of the Holy Trinity. Therefore keep down upon the sure ground of death's deep humility. Make no terms or conditions as to what body you shall come forth with. Leave that to Him who is the Resurrection and Life; who will give every spirit a body, as may answer to what is designed for them; whether to appear or disappear in this principle, according as the Most Holy shall see meet: to employ you in New Raised Bodies, or to draw up into that Orb which is all Invisible, to officiate as an Eternal Sanctuary.

[2F 3:14] Only in this be watchful, and purge out all high and self-ambitious aims, testifying how great your rejoicings are, in the dying marks and signs, whereby as it is said, *The world is crucified to you, and you unto the same;* and hereby you shall lose no due fame, whether or not you look unto the reward that shall follow all this. Thus God himself will have respect for you, upon whose faithfulness and truth you may well rest. He will dignify and honor that which has been set by most light and contemptibly. Therefore observe and narrow up to this Death-path in the first place, and that most circumspectly. And the Blessing of Life will evermore attend you.

## JANUARY 30, 1677
## ASCENT FROM MOUNT NEBO*

[2F 3:15] §.In the first part of the night my meditations were wholly intent upon that way, order, and method, by which a decease might be made to the *Body of Sin*. For the Spirit intimated and declared plainly, that while it was alive, there could be no claim made to Mount Sion's Revenue; for as much as the wise and holy God and our Father, according to Eternal Counsel, had made a settlement upon the True Birth-Heirs, begotten of the Virgin-Spirit, who only can inherit the eternal goods.

[2F 3:16] Now then, so long as the false, evil, intruding birth reigns in the mortal body, the Heavenly Offspring must necessarily be kept down, and made to serve in a strange country, because of their first-born lord, *Esau,* that is so potent and great in this earthly principle. Until such time as the *Jacob's* Birth is grown strong and mighty, he cannot look the supplanted *Esau* in the face. Therefore, full-armed with God's Host, we must maintain our battle, and have no fear. The *Edomites* will fall down when they shall see the Angel of the Most Holy, with His Flaming Sword, passing before us, to make our way into our own land, where our Inheritance lies: God saying unto us, Come return unto your Rock, and there I will hide you, till the fury, wrath and indignation shall pass away. And I will

be unto you an Eternal Cleft of Stillness, where you shall be secured as in Death's Sweet Passive Liberty; so as you shall no more hear the noise of the prancing warrior, who is always annoying, while he can find you on this side of death.

[2F 3:17] Therefore see it of necessity that you must ascend from Mount *Nebo* into this Rock, where you shall be buried as out of sight. For your dying shall only be a hiding, till such time as the life, power, and goodness of the Deity shall re-enter, as a Quickening Breath, to fully spirit you withal. That so the very nature and goodness of this rocky Precious Stone may outflow in you. Then whenever you will smite this Rock with the Rod of the Spirit, it shall gush out Rivers of Living Waters, to become in each of you a Springing Well. That so you may proclaim the mighty Name of Him that has gotten unto a life and victory, by lying close hid, as in the Heart of this Ever-Blessed Sapphire Rock.

## FEBRUARY 1, 1677
## THE DARK AND LIGHT CLOUDS*

[2F 3:18] §.After this opening, as I lay in my bed, I saw Waving Clouds descend upon me, one after another, as the night and the day, dark clouds and light, swiftly following one after another. I was somewhat amazed, till I understood the meaning hereof, which was thus manifested: The Black Clouds were hard pursuing, as the dark Shadow of Death that still would be interposing with the Light Cloud, which represented the Life that was to reign over death. I saw the strife and contest was very great. But the Bright Cloud was last which descended, by which assurance was given, that Death's Black Cloud of Mortality should be swallowed up in the Light of the Crystal Rock, if we did resort there, and fixedly abide, as the Unknown Sepulcher, where the dead in the Lord, as Lilies of *Paradise,* shall first spring from there, as the glory renewed, for to plant as increase a most Holy and Priestly Generation. For this Word followed also, saying, The goodness the Lord hereby shall show you, the same shall you be able to do, and show forth in marvelous deeds; as giving proof that the Cloud of Death is passed away, and that Life which has been hid with God, is risen with a Body like to the Rock, from where it has proceeded. Then you shall be sharers with the High Saints in Light, in what till now has been kept from you.

# Chapter 4

## FEBRUARY 2, 1677
## THE CRYSTALLINE GATE

[2F 4:1] §.This day was set before me a Crystal Gate, by which glassy clearness we might see and take a measuring view of that wonderful place, wherein was the New Jerusalem-Seat, with all her Temple-magnificence; which was shown to be the High Serene Majesty, who as a Circling Bow all of Sapphire Stone, did include such as could pass through this gate. For only those true and sacred worshippers, who with the Lamb had overcome, could stand within that Temple, as Kingly Priests of the High Tabernacle-Order.

[2F 4:2] Then this Word hereupon followed: What you have beheld through this Glassy Gate, are such things as might make you strive hard, and even force an entrance within the Glassy Screen. For these presentations are given forth from the Celestial Globe, to set at work that Transforming Stone, that must all-powerfully anatomize the gross fleshly body; that in no way can pass through here, till it is changed like to that door which you did see: which till then is as a bright Bar of Separation. This privilege you only have a prospect of, as *Moses* had of the figurative land: but you can by no means come here till you have endured the Refining Fire of the Sapphire Stone; which will be given in order to do the last finishing part; that so Transubstantiation may be set afoot. The worthy will certainly see it: who are found in the life of conquest, resolving to beat down that sin-acting body, which is all the alienation that separates you from your God and this Holy Place, which has been viewed within the Pure Gate.

[2F 4:3] These words lay up from the Holy and Just One; and go forward to this high procedure, as not being satisfied with these transient discoveries, no further than as mediums of provocation, to call up all your powers: and thereby to encourage that other, who is to be a Witness for me, in Priestly Power, working in his measure steadily, till the Shadow of Death shall fully flee away. That so successively each one may be clothed substantially with a Body declaratively, which will be God's Mark, to testify who are partakers of the First Resurrection. Therefore set your hearts on this fully. For your labor shall not be in vain, as co-working with the Lord; whose Spirit will have its day, in order to do wonders.

## FEBRUARY 3, 1677
## THE ALTAR STONE

[2F 4:4] §.By all this I came to learn and know, how strait the passage would be, into that Temple which all over was a God-flaming Glory; with the mighty great change that must come upon soul, spirit, and body before entrance here could be; which awakened and set all my intellectual powers fresh a work, to bring to nothingness that which in me was found in the non-conformity, to the rule day by day set before me. Such a force of attractive sweetness took hold upon my heart, that I desired to shed abroad of the same upon some others, that they might not faint or be weary, till we might walk and talk together, as in the transparent form of God; having no more shadow of mutation to prevent those higher Degrees of Glorification, which cannot be known or felt but by the Ascended.

Therefore I called all in me to account, to be judged by the superior will and Spirit of Light, which gave me to see what was in bondage, and what was free, that would not now be any longer in bondage to the condemnation of sin: having that Word brought to me, To search and find out that Salt-Stone, that would make all perfectly sound and savory, which the Corrupter had most subtlety defiled. For I saw that for every sacrifice to be salted with this Stone of Fire was absolutely necessary; for in it lay hid all perfuming sweets.

[2F 4:5] Therefore an express charge came down, to re-assume it to ourselves, as the choice Altar-Stone, where the Unknown Superscription should be written. Oh, then said the Spirit of Truth, you cannot ask anything fruitlessly, as you have done. Do but will, and it shall be done. Oh, that the Most High could have such as were so fixed in body, soul, and spirit, to this all-seasoning Stone of Wisdom, as to trust them with this Jewel of Superiority, so as to leave all matters, whether great or small, with them in whom His heart might rest: that all and every circumstance of things might be managed, for those ends and services which might agree with the in-written name, that runs as a Fountain of Oil into those vessels, which are seasoned by this Salt-Stone of Fire. For in truth the Most Holy has no pleasure to see His own in this world, to live and walk up and down in so mean a capacity, unskillful to set a foot or hand to what lies in the Divine Magia Root; Which you may lawfully stir up, since Christ the Lord has made the way for you, by ascending on high, in order to subdue all things under Him, that so He might subordinately pass of the same power from Himself to you. He calls you to draw out the purchase of His death, by like-dying, and by like-immortal living, according to the penetrating quality; which by stirring up, may effect thereby great and mighty things answerably to the wisdom and sovereignty of holiness, which all as in enclosure, lies about this Holy Thing for you.

## Royalty of the Will: or, the Root of the Divine Word

[2F 4:6] You little know what a principality is near you; but your superior will has yet somewhat that clogs its wheel, which is designed to be the Running Chariot, whereunto the Spirit of Infinite Might must join. Now then by all means seek the enthralling of your will; for could nothing mingle therewithal, but what did fall from the pure Deity, how would you find God all-active in and through you? But herein lies the great nicety, to keep the will-spirit untouched, that nothing from the Briary Root twists about it. If this is kept spotless and free, what may you not find power to do with the Most Holy? Observe and keep this great secret. It is from great and high Love that I have given you an insight, that so all offences may be removed; who would that you should come to reign over all of the earthly.

[2F 4:7] Further of this I besought the Lord might be revealed: for the great depravation was in the matter of the will. For it was shown me it was unequally yoked, and had married Strange Flesh, from which there must be a separation by death. Had not the Royal Will yielded to the tempting *Eve*, but had kept its priority, how great and mighty a Lord might man have been, in and over the whole creation of God, having absolute power in himself. But paying heed to the *Delilah* that is still acted by the Serpent-like spirit to this day, it becomes successively despoiled of this Lock of Strength and Power: and so hereby the shame of our nakedness appears, as to what clothing we might have been made known in. Had not *Adam* thus lost his dignity, and so hereby brought forth fruit unto death, running through all his posterity, in and after the similitude of his sin, which has brought impotency, deflowering us of all that spiritual might; of this we need no other proof than what we each one carry about with us. But the great thing is, Oh, you who are promised as the Mighty Restorer of this breach, what must we do, who are so unavoidably overtaken with the same thrall, and come bound

with the same twisting cords, which has altogether weakened the force of our wills? To this great query, as I humbly pursued, so I had my desire resolved.

## FEBRUARY 7, 1677
## THE NEW-BORN WILL*

[2F 4:8] §.This know and well consider, that your Original is from High Extracted Matter, which is so eternal that it cannot die, but stands at the pleasure of the will, what way it will drive forth itself into. For now it is a Distinct Essence. And had it not been corrupted from that simplified being of purity, you could never have fallen into such a dishonorable state, wherein the royalty of your power is so withdrawn, as you have no defense, nor can make, against those numerous circumstances of evils, that conspire where they may find degenerated ground to work upon. Now then for a more clear and perfect information, what further on your behalf is to be done, that the choice faculty of the will may come to regain its primary liberty, that so it may have all powerful success as before it was enthralled by the tempting *Eve*. There is no other way but for the will to be Born Again, that thereby it may recover its Virgin's might and force. Then every right essence will move and open from Pure Nature's Center.

[2F 4:9] This Birth is not according to the will of man, but God, who out and from an infinite pity and love, is come by *Water, Blood,* and *Spirit* to recover and lift up your relapsed wills, that so they may stand upon their true native prerogative, being also set free from the flattering *Delilah,* which includes the whole variety of all attractive delights from this principle, that as with cords has bound the will down. Oh now then, as beloved of your God, forever drink in this Word of Counsel, and herein join and work with the Spirit of your Lord Jesus, who is come to persuade and allure you, to suffer joyfully the breaking up of your whole earthly family; which only consists of what is judged but lawful and expedient by the False Seers, who are *Babylon*'s merchants.

[2F 4:10] But to you I have other things revealed, and incite you to be at variance with whatever will not consist with the New-born Will; who is to be matched to her who is the real Bride and Heir, to whom a great retinue belongs; of which family you are to bear the Name only. Therefore let it not seem grievous to rend and divide from what is of this evil world; for truly hereby, as God is true, you shall sustain no loss. For hereby will your superior will be so free, chaste, pure, and mighty, as by its conjunction with its Bride, may outspread into a wonderful fruitfulness, more terrible than whatever has been displayed to the check and rebuke of all, and the best of those mortals that yet are come no further, than to a lame and divided property of will, who can do nothing of might.

## FEBRUARY 8, 1677
## THE ARROW OF THE WILL*

[2F 4:11 §.It was further discoursed to me the great and mighty effects that would accrue to that will, which could spring from its original purity, passing as a Golden Arrow with mighty swiftness, nothing thereof touching by the way to spoil its force; and with a Fixed Eye, determining to bring about that very thing which the *arrow* of the will is gone into. Which truly will have the same success that our Lord had when He said, *I will such and such to be made whole.* All those great and marvelous things, which have been done in the world before and since Christ's time, have been as delivered by the act of the will from the poisonous web of mortal self. Oh then how free is it in itself, to summon in the mighty force, which is laid up in God's Strong Tower, for the unbiased will to

draw out, to act and do upon the Holy One's account, as a just steward entrusted with a power of so high a nature, as to determine all matters in the counsel of a simplified will.

[2F 4:12 This was showed to me as a great and wonderful prerogative, into which the Holy Driver made me search, and still further to pry into the Mystery hereof, opening that Scripture to me in the *Revelations, Whosoever will, let him come, and take of the Waters of Life freely.* The force lay all in the *will,* taking and recovering by Lawful Violence the Crown of Immortality and Life; that has been out of reach and sight during the captivity of the mind and will. But now our dear *Immanuel* is come in Spirit, to unbind and set our wills free, revealing what the clog and stop has been, which has prevented the going forth of the will-spirit in sovereignty; who also said, Yet I will give you a deeper sight, that you may see what has lain as upon the Mouth of the Cave, which has kept down the Rising Power of the Will, that it could do no mighty things.

## FEBRUARY 10, 1677
## THE BRIDE-MATE OF THE WILL*

[2F 4:13] §.As I was considering in myself, to wing up in the power of a free-will, according as it is said, *There is a willingness in the Day of God's Power;* and making an inquiry throughout all the regions of my mind, how it stood with me in this matter, I found the will deficient, much after the manner as the Apostle *Paul* in Romans 7 gives a character, in which is presented a divided will in an uncertain motion, which argued great strife, weakness, and imperfection: which by no means was to be found in us staying here. For, said the revealing Unction, to this end I have manifested unto you the adjoining power of supremacy, which must be looked after as the Bride-Mate of the will; which adds the Dowry of all-sufficiency in the Lord's work and business, to go forward uncontrollably, carried up in the chariot of the free-willing spirit that tramples all down before it.

[2F 4:14] Upon this Word of Counsel, I had a mighty voice crying thus in me, with many echoings following, saying, You now know the way; Why is it that you still stay with the viler sort? Try, and see every day, what force you can raise for your revenue to that Heavenly-Born Family: where there is nothing but peace and unity, with Palm Trees of Victory, and Wells of Salvation; that so you may come to taste that which is so sweet, while you are yet but in your way. The smell and sight of *Paradise* will you first entertain, through the Perfect Death of the mortal life, and a while must stay with those lower inhabitants, well-viewing that native place and country: for somewhat that was lost there shall be recovered, as soon as you appear there. Then the Tree of Life will invite you to eat of it, that so Immortality may be regained. Then your souls and spirits are with bodies suited for a higher degree, to come up among the greater dignities; For *Paradise* is as your Bride-Chamber, where you must put on again your Virgin Body.

# Chapter 5

## FEBRUARY 11, 1677
## THE DIVIDED WILL: AN OPENING UPON MARK 10:28-30*

[2F 5:1] §.After this call to *Paradise,* the Spirit presented to me the Scripture *Mark* 10:28-30, and opened every sentence very powerfully to me, as showing we both should sustain no loss by acquitting all those particulars there mentioned: the occasion of our Lord Jesus giving forth the assurance of a better exchange, upon the very fore-going of what was in present view and possession. This query was started upon the coming of the young man, who had as he thought, bid fair for the Kingdom of God, supposing none could go higher than to observe and keep all the commandments. But our Lord had a more searching thing to try him withal, which he was not aware of when he so confidently moved his question.

[2F 5:2] The answer brought great anxiousness, that no doubt he repented that he urged such a discourse, whereby as in a glass, he might see the impossibility of inheriting eternal goods, till he was stripped of all that whereby he was enriched from this lower state of things. Which made our Lord to cry out of the great hardship and difficulty it would be to quit all to follow Him: to come to be no more of the world than He was, but as a Stranger not having any dwelling place, but to pass through it as a foreign country, only biding so long as to do the Lord's message, and perform His work; which ought to be our end and design. For the whole drift of our Jesus, in and by all His life, example, and doctrinal admonition, was still to wind us off, and ungraft us from out of the Strange Degenerated Vine; from where we so readily suck that life, from which a death is to come upon.

[2F 5:3] But to come to what was opened to me from *Peter*'s asking Christ so bluntly, *What they should have upon the account of forsaking of all for Him;* which seemed to be a pretty selfish question. However our Lord overlooked that, giving a high encouragement, to whomsoever shall by forsaking of all, give proof of their love to Him, and esteem of the heavenly treasury above the earthly. Now upon the call and cry which followed me, to draw off and come away from what would make a prey of us, my heart echoed back again, saying, *Ah Lord, how is it possible we should put off all so quickly, when so deeply engaged and settled, as housekeepers amongst the inhabitants here below, as not seeing ourselves capable of passing into another sphere, because we bear gross bodies.* Upon which the Spirit brought these Words to me:

[2F 5:4] First, *whosoever shall forsake houses* That word in particular was thus interpreted, that by houses, the Spirit that spoke in Jesus, aimed at a further thing than an outward material habitation. Houses for shelter are harmless and without offences. But it is that earthly house spoken of, which is the *Body of Sin,* which harbors the whole tribe and family, who are from the Fallen Birth: from which evil seed a Corrupt Generation has sprung, and sheltered themselves therein.

[2F 5:5] There is *father* and *mother, husband* and *wife, brethren* and *sisters,* as the Most Holy Spirit declared, saying, All these are in a compact, being of one blood and life: strong, animal, and mighty rational. And these all lawfully plead for their establishment, in such who are refined from

the more gross pollutions, not considering their own originality, that all proceed from a corrupt being; and it is not the suspending their evil properties at some time, not suffering them to break forth, washing that over which bears the stain of a Leopard Spot. This is too short and defective: For to raise the foundation of the house and linage, you are called upon to pull it down. The incitement is to that Superior Will, upon whom all these combining powers have encroached. It therefore must act a *Sampson* part, resolving to make a battery, that so a final conquest may appear upon the visible stage, resolving to break the brood, though you sink down into death with them.

[2F 5:6] Call up your force. The mighty strength of *Israel* is at hand yet once more, to avenge you by not only shaking, but by removing the Pillars of that House, which has been a receptacle of all this evil fraternity: from which you are commanded to go out. Let not your Noble Will take any notice of their subtle and pretended abnegations, or upper washings, which cannot change the *blackamoor*. It will be an *Ishmaelite* at best, though it may bear a faithful *Abraham*'s son part. Yet because of a Divided Seed, born from the *Egyptian,* it must never share anything of Wisdom's Inheritance. All of that is reserved for her own True Heir, who hereupon will rid all of the *Hagarites* offspring: Not one shall dwell in *Isaac's* Court.

[2F 5:7] Thus I was made to understand the scope and drift of the Spirit: that to forsake all is no less than to be dead to all; and to come so far in this death, as to strike at the very moving cause of what has given life unto these degenerated plants, at which very Root the Flaming Sword will pierce, that so the Original Matter may be thoroughly consumed. Ah, blessed Lord, from your great kindness, such a deep wound you now give us, into that hidden part, out of which all this strange, earthly brood was begotten: such a deadly stroke, that no more of life may ever stir from that center; and give unto us a release from that *Ishmaelitish* family to all eternity, Ah dear Lord Jesus.

## FEBRUARY 14, 1677
## WISDOM'S MERCHANDIZE

[2F 5:8] §.Being this night much carried forth in full sail of the Spirit of Faith (which was the more set afloat from the contradicting and opposing spirits, who were raised as so many pirates that attempted to take away our prize), after this manner it was presented to me: that the Most Holy One had built for us a Passing Ship, to sail upon the broad heavens, to fetch home the rich cabinet-treasure, that is disposable by Wisdom; she giving out upon every arrival fresh lading. Now seeing this, the Serpent said, If we let them alone in this way of high and spiritual traffic, then they will come to a mighty increase; For if the good and choice things of Mount Sion should be brought into this principle, and the worth of them come to be understood, then *Babylon*'s wares could not bear that rate that they now do.

[2F 5:9] Therefore said the Blessed Comforter, Marvel not that wait is laid by that Evil One, who in several vessels, as a man of war, strongly steers them. Who deem it but just and lawful to riffle and despoil what are prohibited, as unlawful to be brought into this earthly region. The wise and learned rabbis of this age take counsel how to prevent the landing of these uncustomed goods, which are not licensed after the known traditional laws. But be not terrified at this, who well-know your merchandize is good and valuable: and in its time it shall have vent amongst those who hereunto are Elected. Therefore do not fear to send forth your goodly ships, rigged with Flying Banners of Faith; for guardian hosts of spiritual powers shall surround you: only let your Bow of Faith abide in strength. And do not give the least ground to what would unsettle you. Trust in the Most High as your strength; and in unity you shall find an almighty defense.

## FEBRUARY 14, 1677
## A GREAT GIFT*

[2F 5:10] §.Being upon a deep consideration of how and after what manner our God would give witness that we are chosen, as *Paul* and *Barnabas,* for a special work and ministry in this world: It was answered that it should be known by a great gift that should come upon us.

## FEBRUARY 15, 1677
## HOLD FAST THE HELM*

[2F 5:11] §.Then this Word came to me, saying, For as much as you have stood for My Truth and Honor, with One Fixed Mind, expect that prophecies shall be made good unto you. §.It was again thus said to me, that by constancy we should wear out every enemy; with this Word of charge: to hold the Helm of our ship fast, for it would then bring us to our own country coast, where we should be beyond the fear of every lurking pirate.

## FEBRUARY 17, 1677
## A SECOND OPENING UPON MARK 10:28-30

[2F 5:12] §.The second part of *Mark* 10:30 was by the sweet flowing Unction expounded to me; being the reward of what should ensue upon the denying and forsaking this whole earthly life, giving and taking a general release from it. This word came as a preface to it: §.Know that the most Mystical and deep sense of this Scripture is now opened unto you, who are beloved of your Lord, not only for the enriching of your minds with right knowledge and understanding, but to give firm ground to stand upon; and hereby to believe, as from a sure and fresh Word of Prophecy, which you may expect the accomplishment of, upon the laying down of your lives, and suffering a real divestment of all thereto pertaining. The sum of which, is the putting off the House of this Earthly Tabernacle, that you may be clothed upon with this House which is here mentioned in the plural number “houses:” to show that there is variety of habitations to take your delight and pleasure in.

[2F 5:13] But what manner of buildings are these houses? The material matter of them you would willingly know? First, by a true description from such a one that is already entered into them; who is so gloriously settled herein, that it is He who invites you to be His neighborhood, saying to the conquerors, Come up, and sit with me in my Throne. Now then, till you have laid down your Earthly Tabernacle of this crazy building, you may take the Word of your Lord Jesus, who is now come by His Spirit, to tell you the material matter of this House which you are to enter upon: the matter and form of which is God Himself; who has had the denomination of old, to be the dwelling-place of His people, and the Saint’s Pavilion throughout all generations. This building is all of Sapphire Stone, having perfect measures of length, breadth, and heights, according to the figure declared by *Ezekiel,* who obscurely portrayed out this high and wonderful palace, for the Most Holy Priests to enter in, and to perform their daily worship. God is not a naked unfurnished house; you will find it already provided to your hand, without any care or toil, in the first, second and third story, with suitable furniture to every place; so that you will cry, Oh how amiable are the Courts of Holiness! Here you will desire to dwell forever in Him, who so splendorously dilates Himself to your internal senses, that all may have a satisfying content.

[2F 5:14] §.Now the next thing to be considered is to know: *What is here included in the Promise?* Here is included the whole number of Divine and Celestial Relations, promised upon a new score, of which *Job* was a true similitude: who lost all in this very same kind, and had all again restored; as a

figure of this new replenished state. All the comfort that may be expected further from this is Marriage-Union: from where increase may come. Without this, the other will not altogether perfect the joy. Therefore be assured that care is taken for this also: there is a Numerous offspring to be born out of this holy habitation. Your Father has already made the match beforehand, before you come here. All things, while you are in this principle, are determined upon. Oh! Here you will know the unutterable pleasure of a Bridegroom, who will be so intimately tender over you, that you shall say, Never was such kind of Love known, or fathomed; when you shall know no more any interposing lover, but can appropriate each other in all purity: a Blessed Exchange here will then be understood.

[2F 5:15] But yet there are higher degrees of joy, when you shall bring forth after your own heavenly perfect likeness. The great blessing that is promised upon this conjunction with the Virgin-Bride is fruitfulness. You shall also see of the travail of your Spiritual Bodies, and therewith be satisfied. Wisdom will spread herself as a Fruitful Vine, upon the sides of this Eternal House and building. Consider *Isaiah* 49:20-21, which prophecy is yet to be fulfilled: *In this time the children, which you shall have after you have lost the other, shall say the place is too strait:* meaning this earthly principle; they cannot thereto be confined. They may look into it, and pass through it as strangers, to show themselves as Jesus did after His resurrection, but no continued habitation for them is here. Verse 22, *But you shall say in your heart, who has begotten these, seeing I had lost my children, and was left alone?* This represents your dead and deplorable state once, and the sudden and unexpected restoration: in that clause, *Where have they been?* So that a Nation and Kingdom of Priests seems to be born in one day.

[2F 5:16] This is marvelous indeed, when you shall see your Spiritual Offspring, as Olive-Plants, about your table set; which will heighten your peace and joy in Him, who is your Tabernacle Framer; who has such durable and pleasant comforts provided in this Mountain of Holiness. Besides there are also Brethren and Sisters, which are born with you from one and the same Eternal Spirit, whose Loves are pure and immutable as God's Love is; rejoicing, not envying at each other's degrees of glory. There are no grudgings here, though a *Benjamin*'s portion be doubled. Among these nothing is known but a high, sweet, refreshing harmony. A blessed family thus compact! It may well make you groan, to put off this Earthly House, that so this Royal Society may be made known to you.

[2F 5:17] And as you have long been kept from here as exiles, so let this true and faithful account, which is now given by that Spirit who bears a True Witness hereof, provoke you to seek this Translation with all your might. For the emphasis lies in that Word of your Jesus, His promise (if you well observe) which runs *now in this time,* or in this very time: signifying all here to be made good. Which will awaken great persecutions, as it is said, strange uproars within and without you; which the Prince of this World will raise, when he sees that anyone shall resolve in great earnest to put off all that he can challenge right unto. It is the *earthly, sinful body* he disputes for. Leave it to him: for after this manner he contended for *Moses*' body, which God had hidden. Therefore be exiles here, but real inhabitants with God, your appointed dwelling place. Leave this principle, and all what is its own. Care not, but render up what you had from it. For when you have quitted all, doubt not that the *hundredfold* will come upon you, according as it has been revealed. Be the first adventurers here for it, and you shall undoubtedly be highly blessed.

### The Daniel-Guard

[2F 5:18] §.The same day I had this Word speak in me: Your soul is among tearing lions, but a *Daniel*-guard is about you. They shall make no prey while you fly to your Rock for shelter. You shall see their mouths sealed up forcibly.

# Chapter 6

## FEBRUARY 18, 1677
## JONAH IN THE WHALE'S BELLY

[2F 6:1] §.Arguments to plead with the Lord were given to me this night, which I found was from the Spirit of Prayer, that urged strongly and potently in me, for our remove out of this tent of vile humanity, into what I did see in spirit. Upon which this Word spoke to me: Be patient in hope, steadfast in Faith, ardent in Love; and you will move the Trinity, to send forth decrees for your enlargement.

[2F 6:2] §.Then again was given into me an idea, as the Dr. and I mutually joined in prayer in and for the same thing, that our condition was like unto *Jonah*, swallowed up in the Belly of the Whale, shut up in the House of Death, enclosed in the *Body of Sin*, around which the seas and floods beat upon, and the deeps did roar, and boil as a pot of ointment. All which represented this world, with the mutinous spirits that are as the restless waves; that as the Belly of Hell, would devour us if not bounded. It was thus showed to me that the True Prophetical *Jonah* was in us; who was cast into this Boisterous Sea, which would drown the Prophetical Life, but that the wise preventing Love of God has provided for *Jonah*'s safety in the very Belly of Death. Out of this grave the Lord our God hears our voice. Though the earth with her bars are about us, yet, said the Living Word, your lives shall be brought out from corruption. Thus death shall not at all hurt you. Let not your souls faint, but direct your prayers to the Holy Temple; that so from these nether depths, through great fervency you may enter thereinto; and you shall be loosed from Death's Bands. The Body of Mortality, as the Fish, shall vomit you up, when once the Great *Jehovah* shall give forth the Word. These openings are still for your support.

## FEBRUARY 21, 1677
## THE ORIGINALITY OF EVIL: OR,
## THE VISION OF THE CLOTH LET DOWN*

[2F 6:3] §.I saw a vision thus presented to me: A green cloth-covering, which was sown over a white sheet, which was let down, and I was bid to rip it, which after a metaphorical manner was done, I know not how. And under it there were creeping creatures that were of a devouring quality. Then under the linen there appeared a Lamb, pure and white, with Sparkling Eyes as Flames of Fire. Which thing considering, it was thus opened unto me that this was the face of the covering, that the Word of command came forth to have ripped and taken off: by which the very inward ground might be discovered, where the fattened beasts did lurk under, who by the covering were bounded. But now the shame of their nakedness did appear, so as they crept away, and could no longer abide, by reason of the Lamb's Sparkling Eye; which caused the remove to be made, saying to me:

[2F 6:4] Now give place; I am come to scatter and destroy all of this evil quality from before my face. I can no longer bear this covering upon me; this partition veil must be rolled away, even that dark *Body of Sin*, which has been as a weight upon the Lamb of God. Whose eyes pierce to find out everything that has made a breach, that so the Heart of God should not be concealed from you: into which you could never see, so long as this thick dark covering remained; whereby has been hidden

the very original matter, that has brought in all the woe and sorrow. For which purpose by way of this similitude, you may come hereby to understand the force of that great Love, that moves to lay all naked and bare, that so through the medium of that Light Eye, which did lie under covert for a time, you might see the image of that sin-breeding Beast, that could multiply into such increase under the green covering. Whose seat and breeding-place shall make discovery to the most innermost ground unto you, that so you may be at rest, from the source of sin's working property.

### The Originality of this Monster

[2F 6:5] §.Let us in the first place now make inquiry into the originality of this Monster, how he came to have a being. For in the beginning of the Paradisical creation, all was created by God, comely, good, and perfect. Then how came this strange essence to be brought in, to despoil and alter the whole heavenly course of things in this Paradisical creation? Now know that before this, there was a creation of Angelical Hosts, as an immediate product from the Everlasting Being: who delighted to generate thrones, mights, and powers, so that God, through distinct existencies of Celestial Spirits of that high Angelical Order, might come to manifest His attributes, which before lay void and hid in an Eternal Stillness. So as here was the Angelical World in pre-existence before the Paradisical.

[2F 6:6] The Superior Heavens were furnished in the first place with dignities suited for God's own peculiar habitation. Of which number, there was a spirit of high elevation, that awakened in some of them who were Principalities in this Kingdom, to exalt themselves equal or above the Lord their maker. For which cause, being cast out from the most meek and Holy Presence, they consulted how to spoil and infect, having great envy against God's New Creation, and formation of Man in and after the express image of Himself. This blew up their coals of jealousy and fiery indignation, which were soon sent forth as deadly arrows. Namely, so soon as *Adam* came to have an existence, he must be tried by this subtle Serpent.

### The Deadly Sleep

[2F 6:7] And the first onset was whether they could, by their Magical Art, cast him into a deadly Sleep, that so thereby his impotency might be manifested, stupefying his Seven high graduated Faculties; who hereby before he was aware, lost his Virgin Generating Strength. And whereas it was said that God cast him into that sleep, the meaning is that God suffered it, and permitted the Probation to come upon him, to see whether he could stand this first insinuation; which was by some secret poison that he had drunk in from the fallen spirits, who had somewhat already cast in of their Evil Seed. In that God said, Seeing man is already fallen from that primary force and strength, that he cannot bring forth from that Virgin Female Property, now it will not be good for him to be alone. He shall have a companion answerable to his present state, which is already lower by many degrees than when the pure Immortal Breath entered in.

### Ye shall be as Gods

[2F 6:8] But had *Adam* with his *Eve* here stayed, and had not been brought in a further praemunire;[5] mankind would not have seen the sin fatal death of mortality. But the Serpent, seeing his Invisible Sorcery had taken so good effect, was now more bold to adventure upon the Second Trial, suiting his temptation more subtlety, telling them they *should be as gods.* This was an inducing argument, at which sugar-bait they presently nibbled, and did eat of it; and in that very moment were turned into

---

5 SDV Note: *praemunire.* An offense against the English Crown punishable chiefly by forfeiture and originally committed by asserting papal legal supremacy in England. (Merriam-Webster.com.)

that mortal beastly shape, the figure whereof you wear to this day. It would have been well had this been all the injury. But oh, the Serpently Seed was cast in there, who at once sent in that poison, that has had its death operation ever since.

[2F 6:9] Thus you see the originality, from where you have derived your earthly life of mortality, which is so inherent, that as a boiling source it is maintained from this strange Introduced Fire; so as though you are in continual labor, to skim off the filth thereof, yet it still renews again. So while the Root of this corrupt matter remains, your toil, fear, and care will have no end. Now what is it you think must enter in so deep, as to suck out the Serpent's Deadly Sting; that has made all this disorder in nature? Many medicines have been applied, and some have been safe, and undoubted, yet they have not reached the place of sin's conception, to destroy both the Serpently Seed, with the First Earthly *Eve,* which is the Mother of all that are living in the earthly property. Her womb is fruitful still, to bring forth viperous thoughts, and evil earthly motion, from a flowing source throughout all generations.

[2F 6:10] Now you will say: *How and by what means shall this be remedied?* You cry: *The power is not in us: How can that come to be nullified, that is so essentially in us? The boughs may be bent while yet tender, and when strong grown they may be cropped. But the stock, as a deep grounded oak, our arm is too short to reach. We cannot move it: the very earth will rend and shake whenever it shall come to be displaced.*

[2F 6:11] Hear now and consider, you whose lawful objection is come before me. It is granted to you that the Everlasting Father, through the mightiness of the Spirit, in the Lamb's nature, must displace for you the Root of this Oak, which is so deeply rooted in the ground of nature. But what tool or instrument will He take in His hand, but the Ax of your Wills. Then a thorough stroke He will strike, by the piercing Eye of His Spirit, who sees the very depth from where its essence proceeds. For without a discovery made of where the cause of this defect is, nothing hereof could be made, or for you wrought out. Therefore the Lamb of God is come to unspread the Veil of Covering; that so by the Sparkling Fire of His eye, you might see from the depths beneath the Birth-source of sin, which opens wide.

[2F 6:12] Also with the same Eye, you may behold within the Heights of *Sion,* a flowing Ocean of molten Gold; to this do fly for healing: for no other medicine can heal the Serpent's Sting within you. These are the Golden Floods, which by the Spirit are daily poured forth, to drown the First Birth of *Eve;* that so there may be an end of that Generating Source, and her Womb may forever come to be barren in you. For which end, orders and decrees are made in heavenly places, that Virgin-Wisdom shall take place in her room: and her Seed shall be destructive to the Serpent's, and to all his hierarchy. And you shall see his head-power bruised to purpose, when all sin in its originality shall be blotted out, by the hand and working source of the Deity; who will give also to you the Key and Chain of Power, that so in the name and authority of the Lamb, you may take hold on the Dragon and bind him, and shut up his flowing source of evil; and with the Seal of the Living God, to seal him up, that he may find no way to come out of his own Lake, to corrupt or deceive you anymore. Then you will begin the Reign of Christ upon the earth, in all stillness, within the pure region of Wisdom's climate: for in the singular number, it will begin to work forth. The day therefore is near or far off, according as you are carried forth in zeal, power, and faith; giving up yourselves totally, to observe the Word of Wisdom. Whosoever are found so doing shall all be crowned with this Diadem of Power.

## FEBRUARY 22, 1677
## THE BODY OF LOVE*

[2F 6:13] §.This Word spoke thus to me: Jointly put on the Body of the Love, in which the Spirit of Jesus will make known to you the Father of Glory, for an Everlasting Reconciliation, as to children new born.

## FEBRUARY 24, 1677
## THE SPIRITUAL AND NATURAL MAN COMPARED

[2F 6:14] §.Thus you see the Earthly Man made out; He is distinct from the Heavenly: He knows nor perceives nothing of the Spiritual Man's concerns; but as living in one and the same body, has great advantage to interfere, and cast in many times his cloudy reasonings. This natural part, as the night, cleaves to the day but yet they have their divided court: they may be possibly kept apart, through the constant watch, and calling in Wisdom's succor and aid. *Eve*'s Birth is yet permitted, thus to live near *Immanuel's* Nature for probation. For the Dragon must try successively upon everyone his temptation; which could not be, if he had not recourse to *Eve*'s depravity, that has lodged you in elementary bodies, by which the strife is occasioned.

[2F 6:15] For the Serpent makes great claim to what he finds sticking and still abiding within the corporeal case; which has so degraded you, as to the visibility of and from that God-like Image in which you once were considered, that now you truly differ little from that low degree of the pure animal creatures, but as your inward mind is yet of a superior magnanimity, that was still kept and preserved within the interior faculties; though the outward image of glory forthwith faded, through the closing with the temptation: from which there is hope that the stem of the whole and eternal matter, being yet left for attraction, may assume again its lost Paradisical Body, through the Gift of the Holy Ghost. For if you once come to recover your inward spiritual transformed might, power, and purity, the outward, at your pleasure will be for alteration. For the way to the Tree of Life will be known by the Spiritual Man: which being fed upon, will operate for another manner of covert, than a Goat-like Skin, wherein is your deformity.

[2F 6:16] For the Spiritual Man born again, will be so wise and knowing, as it will lose nothing that belongs to it upon Election; though for a time it has been driven out from his Paradisical Kingdom, *Nebuchadnezzar*-like, to feed amongst the wild beasts, whose gross body sucks in answerably what this low element can afford him. This is the earthly man's portion, till Born Again into the Spirit. Then he comes to a clear understanding, and sound judgment, and calls over what Heavenly Revenue belongs to him. Another Heart and Spirit is returned, which makes him to see and loathe that Former Image, wherein all of the earthly was found, conversing daily amongst men in beastly shapes. From which, by the Mighty Birth of the Spirit of Jesus, you are returned, to get establishment in your own kingdom: who are true heirs thereof, through Love's Adoption; but not being come to the full age, are not to have yet the reins of government wholly put into your hand: this is reserved for a full-grown Spirit of Wisdom, which will spring in you by degrees.

[2F 6:17] But this is now doing for you, said the deep searching Spirit, a catalogue is making out of what goods and spiritual stuff belong to you, that so you may know what you have to trust, and so set your heart upon. Your Heavenly Father would not that you should be kept ignorant your Eternal Dowry; for the knowledge of this will act forth answerably, into all deified greatness of spirit, as expecting such a Kingdom to come, and such a Priesthood of the highest order to be given you: All

which is to make you consider yourselves, how to carry it while in this world. You shall be vied withal from mighty powers and principalities that command all delights and pleasures that the visible earth affords. But these must be nothing available with you, who proceed from another line; therefore only mind the things of the Spirit; none else can know them. Therefore marvel not that they are despised by all others; these special things are only registered in the Book of Life for you. The deep searching Spirit may look hereinto, who is privileged to take out of the Original Copy of your Father's Will, what He has allotted you in matters eternal.

[2F 6:18] Upon this free discourse and conference, which flowed as Oil, to make the Lamp of my understanding burn bright, that I might be quick-sighted in spiritual things yet more deep to see—I could not be at rest, till the Spirit would give me a particular of those rich immunities and glories, that so we who herein are concerned, might wholly be taken up, in a satisfying joy with our own spiritual things, and mind nothing more of what is another's in earthly things.

## FEBRUARY 25, 1677
## THE EMBROIDERED ROBE*

[2F 6:19] §.In the forepart of the night I was moved to pray for the Priestly Work to proceed forward, in that the most Inward Court might be manifested, which was now being revealed. Then, said the Speaking Word: Lay aside all which now rolls upon you as a weight. After this Word, falling into a sleep, I saw the Doctor's figure, clothed in an embroidered robe, like a priest's cope; at which I congratulated him with great joy, hoping hereby he should come to have more open access into the Most Heavenly Place. For this Word was with me for him, which was spoken to *Joshuah* the High-Priest: Thus says the Most Holy: If he shall walk in my ways, and keep my charge, and abide in my courts, then shall he be a priest over my house. Even so, *Amen;* make him meet for it.

[2F 6:20] §.The Doctor and myself then being met at prayer, where we felt the Life to move vigorously; towards the conclusion of the Doctor's prayer, this Word spoke in me: Pray evermore, and faint not; for what my Spirit shall pray within you, the same does your Advocate convey to the Father, with incense.

## FEBRUARY 26, 1677
## TWO IN ONE BED*

[2F 6:21] §.Somewhat before daybreak, I saw two persons that were known to me, in a boat without oars, as upon a sea. Suddenly a great wave of water broke in upon them, whereupon the boat began to sink. One unstripped himself to swim to save his life; and seeing it in absolute peril leaped out; upon which the other with her clothes took hold of his arm; and thereby plunged him into the sea. Upon which I cried out, saying, Lord save him. Upon which he did rise, getting from that other, who did take hold upon him. Then a gallant ship met him, where suddenly I found myself in, and with great joy took in the person that swam; but the other could not be seen. So after this we removed away with quick sail to the desired haven. After which, considering what this strange presentation should signify, I had only this Word: Take up this parable and say how you saw two in one bed: the one through great favor taken; the other left.

# Chapter 7

## March 1, 1677
## Of Natural Conscience

[2F 7:1] §.This morning this Word greeted me, *Oh! What flesh can live, when the immense deep shall be searched out by the Spirit? Therefore consider what it will be there, to know the things of God apparently.* The Anointing showed now the great disproportionableness between what was to be known of the things of God, and that of man; who though he is degenerated, and has lost all propriety in spirituals, yet is born an heir to terrestrial things: and has such a spirit as to understand how to contrive and make out for himself another Paradise; to which he bends all his force and might, to imitate what was lost; and answerably effects great things by rational wisdom and industry, as belonging to this principle. So that though he has lost the Knowledge of God in things Celestial, yet through toil and care, sorrows and fears, he has recovered temporal revenues as his own to live upon, and to take lawful pleasure in. Nay, the natural man may go much further than all this; who in the more sobriety of morality, from a light within, may be convinced of that duty and necessity and fear, that belongs to that God, in whom all live and have their being; and by a kind of upright moral conversation, may therefore show the Law of God written in their hearts, according to the letter.

[2F 7:2] §.As it is said, Their conscience accusing or excusing according to truth or falsehood acted by them; for by nature things contained in the Law may be done; so that you may take in this higher degree of things into the knowledge of the spirit of a man, as an earthly man, and yet not able to receive or comprehend the more high, wonderful and deep things of God. It is only possible to that which is the mere Birth of the Spirit, distinct from the earthly. *Now then,* said the Most Holy Anointing, *that you may know that this Spiritual Man is born, shall appear by what shall be revealed unto it.*

## March 2, 1677
## Paradise Local and Mystical

[2F 7:3] §.Now as to the things of God, which are given only to the spirit of a Spiritual Man to find out, truly they are so great, various, and numerous, as in times volume they can never be unfolded. Only the Spirit, for the use of this newborn creature, or spiritual born man, brings down a breviate of those invisible things that are in heavenly places: or rather that are in God, who is the original from where all glorious things that are in existence are brought forth: which may be named as the back-parts of God, framed and stretched forth into a light Seraphic Globe, which God furnishes with His own majestic forms; which no one ever saw, or therefore can take upon them to describe. The Spirit only hereof can make report to the Spiritual Man, while yet imprisoned in a corporal shrine and shape. But you will say: What more of the things of God are discoverable? When you are wholly in the Spirit, you need not query. But in the meantime there is a Spirit, which will take its range for you, to view the Father's, goods, possessions, and eternal lands: because as Heirs you are concerned thereunto.

[2F 7:4] To proceed then to the heights, depths and breadths of what are yours in reversion, within the Circle of the Mount-Sion-state. Consider then what of God's is there: they are all yours, as you stand engrafted into the Tree of Life. Now what has the Spirit found out in all the heights above this earthly sphere? First, into Paradise it takes its flight, where all things are in good order, and flourishing state, as before *Adam* had lost his Virgin Mate. Paradise is now stocked again with such as have waded through the floating sea of sin and mortality, in order to put on that Image of Purity, where the least guile or fault may not be found in any. The Spirit sees all in wonderful harmony; for this voice from the High and Lofty One was heard to say: With men risen from the dead I will also dwell, though it be allotted for a time to be a Separated Mansion, till all be gathered into that one Superior Kingdom. Thus you hear good news: That is all rich and flourishing within the Paradisical Kingdom; no decay since *Adam*'s day: but much increase and augmentation daily through the Resurrection of a Spiritual Man.

## MARCH 3, 1677
## MORE ON PARADISE LOCAL AND MYSTICAL*

[2F 7:5] §.These things whereof an account has been given you may be defined as the *local* place of Paradise, where spirits separated in a natural death, putting off their mortal bodies, enter into it, and there put on their Virgin Body; which prepares them to meet their Bridegroom, who then fetches them up to Mount Sion. These are such, who in this very time, have fought the good fight of faith, and had very near overcome this world. What is lacking to make them fully perfect is to be done in this Paradisical place, where they are appointed to stay, till all their Bridal Trimming be finished, and they find that they can pass the way to the Tree of Life, through the Flaming Cherub, who still is a guard upon that figurative tree. In that place Holy Angels also wait by their course, to minister to those who come here as designed Heirs of that more glorious state which is revealed in *Sion*. This is some part of those good things which belong to your Eternal Father.

[2F 7:6] But to open to you a further Mystery, which is: *What may be entered upon in this very lifetime?* Know that there is a *Mystical* Paradise as well as a *Local*, which springs metaphorically, opening from a pure Magical Center; which is a wonderful state to know and witness. It chiefly stands in divine visions, revelations, ideas, presentations, manifestations; in sounds, trumpets, voices, inspeakings; in powers, raptures, joys, and sensible feelings. I say all these Golden Springs flow from out of the bowels of the new Paradisical Earth; and will amount to your present peace and joy. Wait, I say, to feel that now; that your spirits may give a Seal with me, that you have received the Anointing, and that you walk with your Spiritual Man in this Paradise; where you often hear the echo of the Bridegroom's Voice, calling you still to haste the getting on all that which will make you look sweet and amiable; and the fragrant sweets that may perfume and scent, that so all your Garments may smell of these Beds of Spices, upon which you may stretch yourselves. Here awhile be confined to dwell after the manner of spirits in spiritual bodies; till you shall overcome all of this visible orb, and much excel all creatures in it, having the Tree of Life to live upon; which is that which will rarify, and put upon you a more Transparent Body; for they who daily feed upon it, shall be in good deed metamorphosized.

[2F 7:7] Behold, to you this Paradise Gate stands open; and whatsoever of the things of God is there, not only to know, but to enjoy them as your own. But this Word of caution is given to you who are resolved to taste more deeply of these Flowing Sweets: Take heed of the *Laws of Paradise* which once in particular were given to you. Remember them and observe. For you must not be in the quality, halting between two principles; but here keep company with each other: and your Jesus will most

frequently talk with you, and show Himself according to the Love's Betrothal, that is made afresh with you in this *Paradise.*

## MARCH 4, 1677
## THE GLASSY-SEA

[2F 7:8] §.Now from here the Spiritual Man must make another remove, to see what lies for him beyond this, among the precious things that flow from out of that rich Ocean-Sea, which is between *Paradise* and *Mount-Sion.* This is that Glassy-Sea spoken of, which encompasses the Beloved City; where is the residence of God your King, and the Throne of the Lamb, and the Seven Sealing Powers that go forth from the Most Holy One. Now this Burning Sea is for probation. Who is able to pass through here, but they who have gotten a thorough victory over the Beast and his Image: that bear nothing more of his Mark. They and they only can stand here, because they are Signatured from this Flaming Glassy Sphere: that will make your bodies clear and shining as the terrible crystal.

### The Jasper City

[2F 7:9] Oh then, qualified Seraphic-like, enter into that Jasper City, which is all Light; whereunto coming, the Pearly Gate will open wide. The Door-Keeper knows well who are worthy, having the Register Book in his hand; whereinto will be given you to look, that so you may see your own names, and thereby have boldness to enter among this great and Glorified Assembly: where a seat among the Elders is prepared. When once arrived here, you are past all future dangers and fears. Who but the great and mighty God and King, so soon as you appear, will hold out His Golden Flaming Scepter, and bid you to draw more near, and take knowledge of Him who has thus prepared all these good things for the Overcomers, after so much tribulation suffered in the flesh? Therefore, said the all-searching Spirit who has foreseen all this for you, think not much that you are called hereby out from all terrestrial things, yet to be a great separatists from all of this visible creation, and from the inhabitants that are so strongly centered with the earthly life; who may infect you with their Poisonous Fumes, and spot your Paradisical Lily while it is upon its new blossoming. For to this end I have revealed these great things of Paradise and the Holy City to you, that so it might be as strengthening food, while you are in the warfaring state.

### The Nazarite Vow

[2F 7:10] Care not to save that life which stands upon worldly interest, but study daily to lose it. Then shall you surely find that and much more than is yet declared of the things of God. For greater secrets within the Bosom of Eternity may yet be revealed to the Spiritual Man, who shall for this purpose and use give up their pure minds to Wisdom's Private Cabinet, for to be filled with her Daily Treasury; whose delight is much with such who stand clear from all creatures, who are apt to ensnare with corrupt communications. For who knows the full extent of that natural law but such as have received it from the mouth of Jesus; none else are under such a strict obligation. Therefore upon you, who have so greatly sought this favor, as to come within the compass of the *Nazarite* Vow, keep to it: and do not forsake it upon your spiritual life's peril. But if you keep to this Vow, then all those rich and unutterable perfections of glory, which are in *Paradise* and *Mount Sion,* shall be your portion and reward.

[2F 7:11] *§.While this was opening upon the Author, the distinction of the* Mount Sion *and the* Jerusalem-state *was not yet so clearly revealed to her, where she comprehends them here in one: which was afterward more distinctly and fully opened in the revelation of* The Eight Worlds, *as they were*

*made known gradually and experimentally to her; which she thinks fit to declare in this place, as well with relation to this, as to some other passages, which she would not at all alter; but leave in its first native simplicity, in which it was delivered down.*

## MARCH 5, 1677
## HOW A SPIRITUAL MAN IS TO WALK TOWARDS GOD AND THOSE OF THE EARTH

[2F 7:12] §.First as to the Lord: the Spiritual Man stands in that high relation, as he is perfectly under the Law and Tye of such an eternal obligation, as to do nothing but by counsel, commission, and ordination, still having recourse to God as his Father, and to the Lord Jesus, and to the Spirit of Wisdom, who is at hand to direct every thought, word, and motion. Be chaste keepers at home (is a spiritual charge upon the Spiritual Man) in God, his habitation; where all his content and pleasure is to be taken up, not gadding with the Eye of his Mind out of this spiritual Holy Place.

### A Wise and Holy Distance

[2F 7:13] §.Now as to creatures, how to walk to them who are of the earth: *who are not in the discerning of the Lord's Temple-body*, into which there must be no thrusting in that which is unhallowed. All care is to be taken to maintain a wise and holy distance, as our Lord Jesus did, giving no offence to the *Caesars* of this world about their dues; but have no fellowship or conversation, more than what is of absolute necessity. For he can hardly match our Spiritual Man to any being that will suit it but God Himself, into whose Bosom it will fly like an eager bird; remembering we are to be Redeemed from men, and not to walk as men in the flesh, but as those who are justified in the Spirit: keeping company with the flocks that are come forth all washed in the Blood of the Lamb: who is that Shepherd who will sound His sweet echoing Trumpet of peace, love, and joy; wherewith we may be so inebriated, as not to go out of this fold to other Strange Flocks, where only Goats are, who are excluded from the Great Shepherd.

## MARCH 7, 1677
## THE MELCHIZEDEK PRIESTHOOD

[2F 7:14] §.This Word came also to me: I again will choose a Disciplehood upon the Earth, who shall know me in my Inward Spiritual Figure, as I was known in former times by a Terrestrial voice and shape. Now I will walk again upon an invisible Earth, where none but the Spiritual Man can understand my speech, or see my transformed shape. To such who are my Chosen Disciples, I will appear familiarly. Behold I am upon a New Election, to call such who are found in the Crown Number Roll: now one by one, till an increase may be of this Holy Priesthood, to the hundred and forty-four thousand. Blessed are they who are the first Foundation Pillars of this Virgin Church; upon which I can allow to be found neither wrinkle or spot: for if faulty, I cannot be their Head, to walk among those who in any wise are defective.

### The Morning Star of Wisdom

[2F 7:15] For the case is now clean altered, of what it was in the days of my infancy, when I broke forth in the fleshly form. It was of necessity that a tribulated Suffering State should succeed after me, so that sin might expire through daily dyings, which took great effect among my Disciplehood in that age, but they deceasing before reaching to that Perfect Date, of what was to be the Church's Glorified State. Now something greater and more perfect is to be revealed, after so long and cloudy a Day of Apostasy. A Sparkling Star shall rise out of that Orb and climate, whereof it shall be said, This is

Wisdom's fruitful Day; out of whose Eternal Morning Womb, you shall see bright Stars of Glory generated for a Glorious Temple.

### A Seasonable Caution

[2F 7:16] Who then will now sound my Trumpet, and will call to break away from their Iron Yokes, to come to be dignified, as hewed Pillars for Wisdom's Temple to be built upon? Oh! Who shall I find, said the Spirit, that can say, Accept of me for holy use; who without shadow of change, will no more turn into this world? For such a pure and apostolic foundation the Father of Spirits will lay for His Cornerstone, yet in the Earth again: who will open in some such first, that wait as Virgins in a separated mind and spirit; not with a double eye, to look forward and backward, up and then down: no such unsteady spirit will ever be taken in. Therefore the Spirit of Jesus gives you this seriously to weigh as a seasonable caution; who would that this prophecy might be fulfilled in you. Oh, pray for stability and constancy continually.

# Chapter 8

## MARCH 8, 1677
## VISION OF THE EAGLE-BROOD:
## AN INTERPRETATION OF 1TIMOTHY 2:15*

[2F 8:1] §. I, with another person, was walking and conferring about the things of God in a by-place, where no resort of creatures used to be, nor any did we see. But suddenly, lifting up my eyes upon a lofty tree, I saw an Eagle's Nest; they being fledged did all present themselves to view. The old one was flown from them, to bring provision to them. At which sight of these Young Eagles, we who walked together consulted how to take them, and to bring them away as a prize. While thus considering how to climb the tree, we were suddenly carried level with the nest, and did not know how we got so high. But one eagle I saw had fluttered out, and hung by the twig of a tree, all martyred: the legs and the neck all bloody and broke. The rest suffered themselves to be taken, though they were so strong and fledged, as they might have flown from us. But that other person took the number of them, which were six, and I received them into my apron. And so as strangely we were let down from this high place, as we were drawn up to it. After this I set the eagles down, and they very tamely ate bread, which I provided for them. I remembered nothing further hereof.

## MARCH 9, 1677
## INTERPRETATION OF THE VISION

[2F 8:2] §.But when I came to call over this vision, with all the circumstances of it, much was opened to me from the Lord; whose Spirit immediately opened this as He did the Parable to His Disciples, when He appeared in person upon the Earth. For this Word passed through me, Your Jesus is at hand in Spirit to give the meaning of these presented similes; that so by a teaching, and through all you may obtain for the perfecting of what remains behind, so you may be gathered up among the Eagle-Train, with that Mighty Throne-Eagle to reign.

[2F 8:3] §.Then was the vision which I saw thus interpreted: The Lofty Tree which you saw in that desert walk represents that Living Tree, where none can reach but such who are of an Eagle-birth; whose eye is fixed steadily on high, where that mighty She-eagle has fixed her Nest, as in the munition of rocks, there to hatch her Number Seven. Who then is this that has found favor, and that leave should be given to build upon this Tree of Life, whereof the Holy One has given such charge to the watching Cherub? In plainness of speech then, it is *Eve* herself; that has long-lain as dead under the Tree of Good and Evil; whose time of rising is very nigh.

[2F 8:4] But with what Body will she now be raised up? Look and see what is prophesied of her. Then I was pointed to the Song of Solomon 6:8: *Who is she that looks forth in the morning, fair as the moon, clear as the sun, terrible as an army with banners?* Then again verse 13, which was opened to me to be the Resurrection-Call to lapsed *Eve: Return, return, O Shulamite; Return, return.* Thus the lapsed soul of the Inward eternal man is this fallen *Eve.* Here she is called to return to her restoration state, that we may again see her as bringing forth another more happy generation, a true Eagle Offspring indeed.

[2F 8:5] But how, and after what manner shall this be, my Spirit was in deep query: as also when it should appear? Then it was thus said: Know you not that *Eve* lost her Virgin Eagle-body, and so has long been sown into a Slumbering Death, in folly, weakness, and dishonor? But now the Life-Tree has so fluently conveyed itself in this long vacation, as to raise *Eve's* dead body in the strength and honor of the Eternal Virgin-Wisdom of God. So that Old *Eve* will now come forth as a mighty, strong, terrible Eagle; and will now more wisely build her Nest than at first, through the Lord's permission.

[2F 8:6] §.For now she will be dignified with the Spirit of Virgin-Wisdom, to outvie the Serpent's subtlety, according as it is written, She now will build her House or Nest more sure, to wit, upon Seven Silver Pillars: which represent the Seven Eagle-Birds, which were seen in vision. They, Wisdom's First Brood, shall be through the restoration of *Eve's* womb: who will bring forth a most glorious Church in the Earth, without spot or wrinkle. Wisdom has made choice of *Eve* to be her mate (that is the lapsed soul of the inward man); whose hand must help to build this Nest for her. Thus choice Eagle-spirits will be raised up out of old *Eve's* dust for this use and service, to be members of this perfect Church on Earth. You may evidently see with an Eagle Eye that thus, and after this sort, a new Virgin Body must be raised up by Virgin-Wisdom in this world, for the Spouse and Church of Christ, and so for every member of that Body; and so consequently for every lapsed eternal soul to be clothed upon with its New Virgin Body.

[2F 8:7] Oh! Who then will strive first to mount and fly up in Spirit, liberty being granted from the power of the Risen Body, to prepare the first matter for this Nest? Because this Tree of Life is so pure that nothing but what is of its own must come upon it: which are the young Sprouting Twigs, and Golden Leaves, whereof the matter is to be, which are no other than as in the Mystery. Hereby they signify a pure, solid, weighty offspring of holy cogitations, words, and actions; which do you skillfully unite for this purpose, bringing nothing out of the low, scruffy principle to enclose here. Then your defense will be mighty and sure, and your Bread and Waters will be serene. The true Eagle-bird need not fly far; the Tree of Life so near. Here are still fresh fruits upon the branches; from it by no means start aside, but keep close upon the nest. You cannot yet be able to conceive what here by abiding close, may be brought forth from this virtual Eagle-body.

[2F 8:8] But if any shall look again downward, to descend into this principle, before it is fully feathered, great damage and hurt will necessarily accrue, as I saw in the similitude. Therefore take caution, and let none that would be of this Number trust themselves, to wander out before their time. You have need to be strong as Eagles, to encounter the averseness you may meet withal from this lower orb. Therefore abide till full-fledged in wing; you shall be able to fly and mount away, when any creeping thing, or hurtful beast shall set upon you from this low world; then fly to your Munition Rock. This is allotted to be your more constant place of dwelling, which is so near bordering upon the Heavens of Heavens, where the immense Deity is resident: who may appear, while we keep often to His Eagle Offspring. For when you come here to Paradise, there is still another principle that must be passed through, which will be very easy, when you shall bear this risen Eagle-body on you.

[2F 8:9] How suddenly will the Ghostly Dove bring you into the very Third Heavens, there to see your Jesus with your Eagle Eye, as *John* personally did, when he was risen high upon the wing of the Spirit: somewhat of these glories may possibly be seen before you actually enter in. For blessed will they be called, who are Flying Angels, that can declare what they have heard or seen in these higher worlds. These shall bring down glad tidings to the Elect Number. When any of these begin to sound, the Tabernacle of God will descend out of the heavens. Oh! What of flesh shall live, when the Mighty Eagle shall call her own away, to behold what she unfolds within the Third Principle? The

sight of the Eye, and the hearing of the Ear, in that Eternal Sphere, will so fill all with the melody and joy of the Holy Ghost, as nothing of the earthly sense of things shall, or can enter into this Eagle-brood. Now hereby try yourselves.

### The Inward and Outward Man

[2F 8:10] §.For the understanding of the foregoing Mystery, you must know that every one of us have within ourselves an Inward Eternal Man, and an Outward Man. Now the Inward Eternal Man has within himself his own Eternal *Adam*, and his own Eternal *Eve*. His Eternal *Adam* is his own eternal spirit within himself; and his own Eternal *Eve* it is his own eternal soul within himself. This Eternal *Adam* and *Eve,* in themselves, are now to be considered in their fallen and lapsed state: as both being separated from their first, true, original mate, namely, from the Eternal Virgin-Wisdom of God, who was united to both these in Paradise. For both sinned in Paradise; then lost the life of the Virgin-Wisdom of God, and their virgin purity in Paradise. And therefore their True Mate being lost out of themselves in Paradise, they were driven out of Paradise.

[2F 8:11] For the Eternal Spirit, in union with the Eternal Soul, both being united to their True Mate, the Virgin-Wisdom of God, could and might have brought forth a Holy Generation in their own image and similitude, like unto themselves, in holiness and righteousness, and in perfection. But after the Eternal Spirit and Soul had sinned in Paradise (that is, after the Eternal *Adam* and the Eternal *Eve,* belonging to the inward eternal man, had transgressed in Paradise, and were ejected out), they lost their fructifying power, and could not bring forth a holy offspring. Now this Eternal *Eve* (which is the eternal soul belonging to the inward man), is called to return to her restoration state, and to return again to her first state in Paradise, and to reunite herself again to her lost mate, namely, to the Eternal Virgin-Wisdom of God; and then her Womb should be fruitful again, and she shall bring forth none but Eagle-Birds, none but a holy offspring, to make up a perfect Church on Earth, without spot or wrinkle.

### A Prophecy about the Eternal Eve

[2F 8:12] Here is now a prophecy, a prediction: That now the time is come, that this Eternal *Eve,* which is no other than the inward eternal soul in its lapsed state, whose womb has been barren and unfruitful; but now the Eternal Virgin-Wisdom of God will sow her Virgin Seed into her Womb, and she shall be fruitful, and shall bear Twins, and bring forth a perfect Eagle Offspring, and they shall make a perfect Church on Earth. And now the soul in her restoration shall again be fruitful in child-bearing, in bringing forth children to inherit perfect justification, and perfect sanctification, and salvation. But then this *Eve* must continue in faith and charity and holiness, with sobriety, as the Apostle mentions in 1Tim. 2:15, The restored soul, by its union with her true guide and mate, the Virgin-Wisdom of God, shall bring forth a Royal Offspring, presented to be the strong Eagle-brood.

[2F 8:13] And this is the work that Wisdom is about to do, to reunite herself to the eternal soul, which is the Eternal *Eve,* as her true mate and guide; and to sow her Virgin Seed into the womb of *Eve:* to break the Head of the Serpent. Then *Eve* shall be deceived no more, but now shall become the Mother of Celestial and Heavenly Children. All her children shall possess Mount Sion, and the New Jerusalem state of glory. This is the Eternal *Eve,* the eternal soul, which now shall be the Mother of all living: That is, all her posterity shall now feed upon the Tree of Life, and thereby become all eternal, immortal, and incorruptible. And all this shall be brought about by Wisdom's art and contrivance; that is, by reuniting herself to the soul, and thereby becoming again the soul's True Mate and Guide. This is the state of restoration; and this is that state that Wisdom is bringing forth upon the Earth. And in this figure of the Eagle-birth, Wisdom prophesies and predicts what is near at hand, to

be fulfilled and brought to pass, to egg us forward in the belief of it, to be done within our own eternal man, in the work of Regeneration.

### Mortal Adam and Mortal Eve

[2F 8:14] §.But now there is belonging to the Outward Man, the Mortal Man, the immediate product of the fall: a mortal *Adam* and a mortal *Eve.* The Mortal *Adam* is the mortal spirit of the outward man; and the Mortal *Eve* is the mortal soul of the mortal man. In her fallen state she is the Mother of all living; that is, of all living mortal spirits with mortal souls, and with mortal bodies. Her Womb has been very fruitful in this state of Apostasy. She has ever since, in all ages, brought forth a mortal offspring, subject to the death of mortality; who have only fed upon the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil. She has brought forth a fleshly offspring in her likeness and similitude, and has had a long day in the world.

[2F 8:15] Now the prophecy and prediction, in relation to her Restoration, is not concerning this Mortal *Eve* belonging to the outward man, but it is to be understood of the eternal soul; that Eternal *Eve,* that has been so long barren in her lapsed state. But now *Sophia* will once more espouse herself unto her, and she shall bring forth a Holy Issue, a birth of divine eternal Eagles, to make up a perfect Church on Earth, whereof Christ will be the Head and King to reign over. This is only wrought for explanation sake; that you might not think it mere confusion, what is written and manifested from above, in the Crystalline Glass of Divine Wisdom.

### Eve and Eve

[2F 8:16] *First:* You must therefore distinguish between *Eve* and *Eve;* between the Eternal *Eve* and the Mortal *Eve,* the one belonging to the inward eternal man, the other to the outward mortal man. And the prophecy is only to be understood of the eternal soul, and not of the mortal soul.

[2F 8:17] §.S*econd:* You must distinguish in the Eternal *Eve,* between her fallen state and her restored state; for the prophecy is not what she is at present, but what she is to be in her restored state.

[2F 8:18] §.*Third:* You are to consider that the eternal lapsed soul is unable to effect it; but it is the work of God's Eternal Wisdom, who will freely espouse herself to her again, after this long time of separation and alienation. And then she shall be the Mother of a Holy Generation. Her Womb shall bring forth no other children, but such as shall make their nest upon the *Tree of Life.* And these things premised and understood, the representation will be easily understood by Wisdom's Eagles, and confirmed sufficiently by the Holy Scripture.

[2F 8:19] §.For you may read that *Adam* and *Eve* were both created eternal, immortal and incorruptible creatures in their Paradisical state, and they both were created perfect, without any spot of sin or blemish of weakness, while they stood in their Paradisical Innocence. They were both to have brought forth an Eternal Holy Generation, a Perfect Church on Earth, had they remained in Paradise. But sinning in Paradise, they lost their Virgin Power, and so consequently their Virgin Birth. And they could not bring forth a perfect generation, having transgressed and lost their Virgin Power, through Wisdom's withdrawing and estranging herself. Therefore they were driven out of Paradise; being now banished from their Paradisical power, and having both eaten of the Tree of Mortality, and having both of them (both *Adam* and *Eve*) clothed themselves with mortal clothing, with a mortal spirit (that is, with a mortal *Adam*), and with a mortal soul (that is, with a mortal *Eve*), and with a mortal body of flesh.

[2F 8:20] Now the Mortal *Eve* has been very fruitful in the birth of her mortality. But the eternal soul, the Eternal *Eve* (typed out in the state of Paradise to be the representative mother of a perfect gen-

eration, to make up a perfect church on Earth): the womb of this Eternal *Eve* has been barren to this day. But now Wisdom prophesies and predicts that she will look upon this Eternal *Eve,* this Eternal Mother, and will make her the fruitful mother of a joyful generation. But she will reject the outward Earthly *Eve;* that has exalted herself in the multitude of her children; but they were only to be the brats of *Babylon,* and will make her womb to be barren. But the children of the Eternal *Eve* shall be the Children of *Mount Sion,* and the Children of the *New Jerusalem.* And this is the meaning of this vision and divine presentation, for to support those that wait for Wisdom's Day to appear in *Eve's B*irth, through the Eternal Soul's restoration, in union with Eternal Wisdom.

[2F 8:21] It is not only the inward man (the Eternal *Adam* that is an eternal spirit with his mind, will, and senses) that shall now be restored; but also his Eternal *Eve* (his eternal soul, with all his affections and passions) shall be also restored. And though the Holy Scriptures make mention chiefly of the first *Adamical* man's restoration, yet it also mentions *Eve's* restoration: I say the woman's restoration as well as the man's. It is also clear that the whole inward eternal man shall be restored, and not only one part of him, not only the will-spirit, which is but the superior part of the inward eternal man, commonly called the First *Adam* that sinned; but also his Eternal *Eve,* that is the eternal soul, the inferior part of the inward eternal man, called the woman: this shall be restored also. So that the whole man with his spirit and soul, with his *Adam* and *Eve* shall be restored, in the day of his restoration, when Divine Wisdom shall espouse and contract herself to the inward man. *Oh, blessed day! Come, dear Wisdom, and finish this act of restoration in the body, soul, and spirit of the inward eternal man, who is hid within the outward.*

## MARCH 10, 1677
## SEPENTLY WORMS*

[2F 8:22] §.This day we were set upon by that strong warrior, that had assumed a poor corporeal shape, to shoot forth his Venomous Arrows in great bitterness, in order to disturb us. I presented this grievance in prayer to my God, that these raging spirits might be bound: my spirit crying and bewailing this wrathful, boiling cauldron, that the infernal dark powers had kindled this fire, that so unsavory fumes daily rise as scum. I then besought the Lord, that if by any means both she and we might be delivered from these buffetings and Serpently Stings: my spirit crying, Oh Lord, what have we done that this foaming Tempestuous Sea must still roar about our ears; is it needful it should be so? Then reveal your mind herein still further to us. Upon which, I quietly reposed, committing the whole of this concern to that Mighty One, from whom must only come both the help and power, to allay all of this boisterous nature. About break of day this Word came to me, saying, Behold and see, it is but a Worm that is of no significance that thus troubles you; only the subtlety of the Serpent has entered to work through it. But if you knew your own spirit of might and fortitude, you might easily suppress it, and bring all of this under, and to naught.

[2F 8:23] Then again this Word came, saying: To what end is that nest prepared upon the Tree of Life: is it not that you might fly away from all these hurtful beasts? Why do you walk upon their ground, corrupting your pure and spiritual minds, while you talk with Serpently worms? Consider that to you both is given an Eagle-wing, that whenever you will outspread its rays, it will soon release you from all prickling thistles. Therefore give charge to your fellow Eagle, from him who is the Holy Watcher: that you wander not out from that Munition Rock, where you have that which is more weighty to regard than all of this low orb. Then this Word ran like lightning through me: Oh, faint not, but as mighty Eagles renew your strength; and then you will have rest from out of all tribulation. Then this Word immediately also followed: Though the Evil One moves in the form of a Worm yet fear not; for you shall bruise him as a Worm.

# Chapter 9

## MARCH 11, 1677
## VISION OF THE WONDER-WOMAN, AND OF THE NAKED CHILD

[2F 9:1] §.In my first sleep, in the night time, many magical workings and ideas were presented to me. As first, a figure of a Woman, with a Crown upon her head; who seemed to be but of a small stature, but her Visage was bright as the sun and clear as the moon, with a white loose garment girt about her, with a seeming white silken girdle. She came near to me, saying, Behold and see what you may arrive to be in me; and so passed away.

[2F 9:2] §.Then after a while, there was a Child all lovely and fair put into my arms; it was all naked, of a smooth shining skin. I could not see who it was that disposed it to me, but it was unexpectedly let down into my arms. I thought it to be very weighty, though but little. So passing to go away with it, it suddenly slipped through my arms to the ground, at which I gave a great screech; and with great fear and concern, took it up again without much damage.

## MARCH 12, 1677
## INTERPRETATION OF THE WONDER-WOMAN

[2F 9:3] §.Concerning this vision, the thoughts of my head were for the space of time much troubled: till the Revealer of secrets expounded to me the meaning. As to the first, which was the Woman with the Crown upon her Head: This was declared to be the Virgin-Bride of the Lamb, who came to show herself made fully ready, all bright and fair, as the Queen and Princess of Heaven, who has her place at the right-hand of the *Immanuel;* for so much as this Woman is the glory of the God-man, who out of this masculine nature is taken, according to the figure of the First Paradisical Man, who brought forth that *Eve,* that was the mother of all that lived in the mixed property of good and evil. All of which offspring the present visible world consists of, which to this day is under the denomination of the fallen creation: which has been upon restoring ever since the relapse, but not yet restored. What then has made it stick so long? Where is that Woman, whose Seed must bruise the Serpent's Head? Is she not yet made manifest? Yes sure, she has been known as to the first figure hereof, to whom it was said that this *Eve,* or first woman, should bring forth her seed in sorrow.

[2F 9:4] It has also been generally concluded that out of this earthly *Eve* that Royal Seed should come, by which the Serpent in nature should be destroyed, which was so suddenly introduced both into *Adam* and *Eve.* True, the genealogy did so run from them, to the birth of Christ after the flesh, but yet not to be reckoned for *Eve's* Seed: though God said to the Serpent that He would put enmity between his Seed, and the woman's. But how is that to be understood? Not in the line of Natural Generation. Neither was it said that from such a woman, who lies under the curse of sin and sorrow, that this Blessed Birth should spring therefrom; though in truth and substance, a mighty and Wonderful Birth was made manifest, wherein a deeper Mystery has been couched than to past time, and past generations has been revealed. But now the hand of love begins to move, and the covering is turning away off from such, who are turned in to know the treasures of Eternal Wisdom. The Spirit of Truth

is verily at hand to drive and guide the pure mind jointly with itself, into the Ocean-Mystery, which is God Himself in His abstracted Deity, whereinto separated spirits may very deeply dive, when they are departed from their earthly senses.

[2F 9:5] This deep thing which is upon revealing, I found like a boiling pot of Ointment, so sweetly flowing into my intellectual part; upon which my mind, as all in a flaming light, was enlightened to see what lay under the Mantle. Who according to Eternal Counsel, was hereunto foreordained, typically to be brought forth in the line of natural virginity, even a Man of Sorrows, and acquainted with griefs, and subjected to sufferings, hiding and covering by a terrestrial form, that Sparkling Star of the Deity: which also would have been obscured, if He had not again risen from the dead. Which in that day gave the church a mighty remove, from shadows into that which was more spiritual and substantial, through the giving of the Unction; which has from that age striven mightily; But the Man of Sin still has been too strong: witness those complaints, to the very breaking hour of mortality, in them that are highest in the Birth-ministration of Jesus, as working through human properties.

[2F 9:6] But then an objection must arise: *If all this be too short, what more is there yet to come? Things have now long stood at a stay. What more may we yet expect from the Mighty God and Everlasting Father, that so the Temple body of Jesus may not still lie unperfected? Well, what more forceable can there be than Christ in the flesh and Christ in the Spirit?*

[2F 9:7] To this an answer is prepared by the all-searching Spirit: There is yet a Virgin Woman to be revealed out from the heavens, whereof *Mary* that brought forth Christ according to the flesh was but a Type. For it was neither *Eve,* nor she to whom the Promise was made concerning that Birth, which should bruise the Serpent's Seven-headed Power. There must be another genealogy found, from which the Serpent-Treader must also come. Look and see, and you shall find it recorded (*Rev.* 12), to which place I was referred by that Holy Ghostly Seer, as to a foundation for this more excelling ministration; *John* seeing this in vision so long since, and nothing hereof yet produced. Let that not seem so marvelous in your eyes; for times decreed are in the Spirit, as known to God in what age in the world this blessing will be most seasonably brought forth. You may conclude by Wisdom's Star that has appeared in your heavens, that out from there (if kept pure and clear), this Great Wonder may follow, according as you did see in the late idea.

[2F 9:8] But, ah my Lord, how is this to be understood? Sure this Woman is not to be manifested in any one particular, who is subsisting in a corporeal substance. For she will come all arrayed in a Sapphire-like Body, and not in the garb of the mortal creature, with the Globe of this world under her feet. Therefore this query meets with this: *Who living in this principle may expect such a ray of glory to become a covering?* And this was answered: Why do you think that it was cried up for a wonder, if it was not upon some extraordinary change? Who though thus transformed into such brightness of excellency, yet she is called a woman: but the pure heavenly glory altogether covers the creaturely being. The sparkling Deity that was hid within becomes the great and high amazement, a Flaming Garment. This also will be obvious to the right discerning eye in this present sphere, from where will arise the admiration.

[2F 9:9] And great questioning there will be: *From where did this Woman proceed*? If any hereof shall doubt: *How it can ever be on Earth, for Virgin-Wisdom to draw over her Virgin veil of purity in some one or other, so as expressly to personate her?* Tell them from the *Alpha and Omega*, that such a spotless Lily will sprout out of the Immaculate Body, and shall be watered from the heavens so fair and lovely, that she will be Elected for the Lamb's Bride and Mate, who is raised to the high Eagle-

State, who may have power to mount into the Heavenly Place, and again be sent therefrom, for such purposes and intents as are here premised; she being big with such a travailing Seed as may break the Serpent's Head, in dethroning him who has got into the heavenly place: where now expect he will be cast out, as strong travailing powers take hold upon this woman.

[2F 9:10] These pangs and sorrows will differ much from those that were in *Eve's* Day, whose sorrows greatly multiplied hereby, through a natural, vile, sinful body. There is no hope hereof that it shall ever be destroyed, till this Birth of Births grows to ripeness in anyone, who in Wisdom's virgin likeness shall be bred up to the Wonder in Heavenly Places, from where all wonders shall go forth. For who but this Man-child shall be the ruler of nations in all sovereignty, no more under the power of any *Herod* or *Pontius Pilate,* to be arraigned unto death? For He is immediately caught up unto God and His Throne, and from there to descend again, to bring up the Remnant of the Virgin-Seed, against whom the Dragon still makes war. But to each one who belongs to this Kingdom of Priests, they shall be mightily born up upon His strong Eagle-Body, so as all the Dragon's floods shall be too short to reach this high Eagle-Nest, which is prepared in the Heavenly Place. Upon this Rock of Strength, I, said the *Amen,* will build my Virgin Church; who shall no more know anything of the Number of the Beast, but shall be totally acquitted from men of the earthly quality.

[2F 9:11] Therefore I give this Word to you in particular; that you may know there is somewhat of Grace to you peculiarly by this Prophecy, which is upon renewing. Therefore consider hereof, and ponder it deeply: for to the pure, chaste virgin mind, much of this may happen suddenly. You have daily received much from the Unction in order hereunto; which Golden Talent I expect should be improved, that so you may further be trusted with more considerable dignities and powers, tending to Wisdom's Star Sparkling Crown, which to none is given, till they be quite driven out of the worldly principle. If you can ascend with all your might to this Tree of Life, you may find quick removes to Him, who is that Ghostly Overshadowing Power, who can impregnate with this last all-saving Birth. *Oh,* said the Spirit, *That you could give yourselves without further debate to the Glorified Person of your Jesus; that the Issue might be, namely, a glorious Son of Might, brought forth to all wonderment.*

## MARCH 13, 1677
## INTERPRETATION OF THE NAKED CHILD: OR, THE NAZARITE BIRTH*

[2F 9:12] §.Now concerning the latter vision, whereof I gave a narrative according as I had magically seen it, the Interpretation was after this manner given to me: This is the Child that is born from the Heavenly Virgin Womb, after all those spiritual and deep travails. Moreover it was said to me, Do you not remember that some years since, you asked for a son of God, with great earnestness, and engaged to dedicate him to be a Temple-Priest and Prophet, if herein you might be answered? Though your petition was not granted in that way, as to have a son by earthly generation, but it shall be much if you shall see the travail of your soul and spirit in the birth of a pure *Nazarite,* given unto you from the Lord; which is a thousand degrees beyond what you were once greatly solicitous after, namely, a fleshly birth.

[2F 9:13] Since that time, much has been wrought for you. Wisdom has so highly favored you as to cast you into her Virgin Mold, else there would be no way capable to embrace such a Man-Child, who shall have power to do great and mighty things on the Earth; and to hold up the Four Winds; an *Elias* Spirit to shut and open the heavens. Such a one God will need to have upon the Earth. But none could yet arrive to this mighty high and Glorified State; the mortal spirit thus far so hindered, and the

Dragon has raised great seas of partition, and with his twisting tail has brought down such as were ascending for Heaven. For out of Mount *Sion's* Heaven, Wisdom's deputed Virgin Woman is to descend, with all accomplished power, and perfection of holiness. Then what manner of Child do you think this must be, who is begotten by the Eternal Word of Truth, and is daily to be brought up a *Nazarite*, by the pure Honey Dews, and Milk from the Virgin Breast; that so His strength may hereby daily grow? Happy and blessed will you be called, if you shall bring such a spotless *Nazarite* Lily out of your Spiritual Womb.

[2F 9:14] I, the All-Seer, tell you that the Serpent heaves mightily against it. There is daily plotting to make hereof an abortive, nay, when you have him in your arms it may slip away. This was shown for caution, that you might take a sure hold: because this Holy Birth is designed to be in that person to whom the Serpent has had long indignation. But through great heed, and daily watching and care, he may keep out from this last prepared hurtful snare; who then shall indeed bear the banner of victory over all his and your home-bred enemies; who if obedient to his Eternal Virgin-Mother in all things which shall proceed from the Law of her Mouth, may then be the Man of Wonder indeed. But beforehand, take charge on his behalf, lest he suffer any *Delilah* to come near his Head with a Razor, where only his strength lies. If so, all will be undone, as you did see in the case of *Sampson.*

[2F 9:15] This Holy Spiritual Offspring must be for the conversation of Masculine Virgins, who are of his own rank and sort. For whatever from this low contrary sphere shall interfere with this Holy *Nazarite*, the Marks and Spots thereof will be obvious upon that smooth shining skin, to his disgrace. Therefore let him abide in that milk-white nature answerable to his Birth, still keeping washing with the Water of Life, that so Wisdom may have great joy and delight in her Firstborn in the Earth. I heard Seven Echoing Voices in me declare who it was that should personate this *Nazarite* birth. If he could clear himself from all clogs and weights, then, said Wisdom, who but he shall be my Firstborn Heir? This Word of Truth give him for meat to eat, no other but what proceeds from the pure Unction, in his heavenly nature in him; as he can digest it, and as Wisdom's spring-well flowing continually in him.

[2F 9:16] *§.This person noted so often by me, did not arrive to this Perfect Degree, so as to be Wisdom's Firstborn, though he reached far: yet was not able to obtain the Crown-Number while he lived in this principle. The Dragon and the Beast made hard war against him, in conjunction with the elements that took away his outward mortal life: which made out* The Vision of the Child *falling out of the Author's arms. But the same Spirit is to revive in another, and so to be taken up again; which shall assuredly make good this visional prophecy in its time.*

## MARCH 14, 1677
## VISION OF THE YOUNG DRAGON*

[2F 9:17] §.In this juncture of time, upon these weighty prophecies frequently opening upon me, they indeed took up my whole mind in spiritual debate for myself, and that *Nazarite* whom the Prophecy did still eye, for whom I was made to be concerned: because he was to be a Joint Pillar, to bear up and to declare this New Virgin Ministration; which I saw would be mightily envied, contradicted and warred against, so soon as it should be brought to light. Nay while but unto us revealing, the Serpent works in many wiles here against us: of which still we have warnings by vision and inspeakings.

[2F 9:18] After the break of day, this by presentation was shown to me, as upon the Twinkling of an Eye: I espied a young Dragon out of a hole of the earth, with head, wings and tail, so speckled

with black venomous spots, as I could not bear to look upon it. And while I was considering what should be done to destroy this Venomous Beast, immediately from on high, a young Sprightly Eagle flew down upon the back hereof, with such undauntedness, as it had no power to resist the Eagle's arrest; who mightily tore the Dragon's back and tail with her bill. What further victory she had I did not see, the vision hereof shutting up.

[2F 9:19] But this Word of comfort was present with me, saying: See after this manner you will be relieved by your own Eagle-Spirit; for nothing is like to the courage and strength of an Eagle. Therefore when at any time this polluted Beast shall face to daunt and affright you, gather up your Eagle-might, and be revenged in the first place upon that tail; wherein lies the greatest danger: for there is both sting, venom, and poison, and also subtle attracting insinuation. These are very hurtful because not discerned, and therefore not feared or mistrusted. As if his head was set forward against you, then you could not but see his mouth standing always wide open, to swallow up what and whoever but looks within the circle of his kingdom. Of which you have been aware, and therefore have been kept by virtue of an unknown Angelical Guard, from his mouth's foaming rage; which this subtle Serpent knows well, and therefore has turned his tail against you through a young one. Who if possible might overcome your Virgin Spirits, and cause you to turn down, and fall in with the Dragon and Beast again, after all chaste separating *Nazarite* Vows, and ascending mights, by which like Eagles you fly to the Munition of Rocks. Who with his Scorpion Tail will then surely circumvent you, whose sting and power lies there to hurt by commission from the King of the Bottomless Pit.

[2F 9:20] Therefore make your onset, like a right brood Eagle from your Tree of Life (your Eagle-eye will soon espy all Scorpion Spirits, with their twisting tails); and then rend and tear with the Golden Bill of that strong Eagle-Spirit, as *Sampson* did the lion, which he met with in the way. So take courage to rend away the very sting in the tail. Then you shall proceed further unto the Head-power, till bruised under your feet; of which this will be the assured sign.

# Chapter 10

## MARCH 18, 1677
## THE FIRST-BORN ISRAELITE*

[2F 10:1] §.This morning this Word came to me: Draw into your center-deep, and see what lies there so precious, so weighty, and worthy to be dispersed forth; that so your heavens within may be with that perfuming Sapphire-Stone, yet throughout more brightly inflamed: because the Virgin out there will first appear, that must wear the Crown of Twelve Stars. Take present care of the heavens of your mind, and of that pure Unction-oil extracted out from that sweet composition matter, that is not known by name. The rich quality thereof is such, as no language here found can express: but through contact with it, you will know its high nature and operation. For from this unknown thing will spring the Firstborn *Israelite*, where nothing of guile shall ever be found.

[2F 10:2] Then was a new charge given for myself, and the Doctor: That we should draw apart from all impertinent fellowships; because called to act forth a superior part, as those who are designed to wait for the Triune Glory to fill our whole temple minds; who will in our Heavenly conversation be, if nothing throngs in from this world. For an instance hereof, that Scripture was brought to me of the two disciples, when walking apart, and only talking of Jesus, their expectation of restoration, how immediately was He with them, and expounded all things to them: which was Sealed with an inspiring Flame, which gave witness who made the Triune there: who will still be with us, as He is the subject of our discourse.

## MARCH 19, 1677
## ADAM'S FIG-TREE

[2F 10:3] §.I found my Spirit in a disgust still against *Eve's* Birth, as it hung upon the heavenly and superior part, which I felt to burthen it, though the Virgin Nature did daily flow and spring through the center of vision and revelation; Whereby heaviness was upon my intellectual spirit, so as I was made to pour out my complaint in secret to my Lord Jesus. Upon which after some repose in the night, there was the Similitude of a Man standing before me, leaning under a tree, with a working tool in his hand, as one worn out with labor, with a dew of sweat upon his face. He seemed to be so sick and tired, and he entreated that I would bear him away from that place; whereupon I took him up, and carried him upon my back, but I could not long bear this ponderous person, but must throw him off, else I perceived we must fall down together. Whereupon it was said, Carry him back to his own place, who did come from the Earth, and thereto he must return, for to spend out his life, and die, that you thereby may be fully discharged.

[2F 10:4] This idea had a considerable speaking in it, as it plainly alluded to the fallen Adamical State. The meaning was clearly opened by the Spirit, who said, What have you here seen, but that old life *Adam*, who was made out of the dust, and inferior part of the Earth, who is turned out from the Angelical shape, where he might have very near address to God his Maker. But he sucked in from that wretched Tree, that which has made him so deplorable a figure, as you did see. So as he is only meet to spend his days in toil and labor, upon that ground which is cursed for his sake, so as it will or

can bring forth nothing without sweat of the face. Oh you, who are sufficiently sensible of this working, toiling day into which all are fallen, but can bear the burthen as if it were indeed a Paradisical sphere, so lightly has the whole creation yet cared for its relapsed state: how choice and few are those that seek herefrom to be released, being of that persuasion that the Earthly with the Heavenly must unseparably grow together as Twins? Which is not so determined by the great God and Creator, but he still expects that through the many depressions both in spirit and body, some one or other, are this long-run out time, would be so weary of the body of toil, sorrow, and sin, as to violate, upon the love, pity, and power of God the Father; who cannot resist to send forth saving succor, to ransom such as still fill his ears with cries and groans, for redemption out of that which is the external original matter of all and every kind of thralldom.

[2F 10:5] Hearken now, and hear the glad-tidings which is sent from your Father to you; who has taken notice of your travailing sorrows, while yoked with that man, upon whom sentence is passed, that he might live by care and labor. Yet to you I say he shall not always and forever be your clog. There is a Birth of Strength upon the rising that will easily throw off this depressing weight. Yet a little while and the Iron-Rod shall rule the Man of Sin, so as to divide him from you. Many ways have been tried to make him die, but all have been too short: for he has been a warrior from his original sin-conception, and will keep the field of this out-birth, as he has done from *Adam*'s day. *What hopes then say you that he shall be thrown out of us?* For here I did object in love, fear, and faith, that many Worthy Ones had striven hard to conquer by death, some of whom did go very far, but scarce in any did this Death-Arrow so hit, as to obliterate sin altogether in its root. Then was it replied, It is sufficient that One was perfect and just, without sin, in a human figure.

[2F 10:6] Then was that Scripture spoken in me, *As by one man's disobedience, so by the obedience of one, many shall be made righteous* (Romans 5:19). The Words were thus opened by the Spirit, who said, God revealed to *Paul* in his day, that nothing less was designed than a full and clear acquittal from that First Man, which did so naturally work in toil and labor, only bringing forth fruit unto death. And who but that Man called the Branch shall answer to that defectiveness, in abolishing the very sperm of sin: that as nothing thereof could be found in Himself, so likewise in those who are Elected to be in joint heir-ship with Him in the Kingdom of *Mount Sion*. Whereunto He translates none till the old *Adamical* life is laid in an everlasting Sleep of Death, no more to awake for contempt and shame: as often now it does, which has stopped the *New Jerusalem* from descending down, because once has been perfect and ready to meet this Heavenly City. Therefore said the Most Holy and True, another manner of Church must be gathered from among men, out of the Womb of that first Morning Star that is now upon breaking out. A star-like Offspring is to proceed, that shall go forth with the Iron Rod of Power, and dash in pieces every one of the Dragon's Heads, till this Church be born upon the Earth, who all are of Angelical natures. Till then expect no power to reign over the Dragons and Beasts.

[2F 10:7] To you who are numbered to bear the Lamb's trophies, stand to your Virgin Call: fly not from her innocent white colors, whatever shall be here said against her, if you shall be the Firstborn Star, who shall shine upon Wisdom's Crown. For this end the Loves Eternal Testimony has opened the clear Body of the Heavens; that you might understand what may be looked for in this age. Therefore stand as mighty and immoveable pillars for the Lamb and the Bride's Church; and have great indignation against those that would decry it down. Fear not those pushing horns that war here against her; she will make the glittering Sword of Power to be your defense against all your enemies. Be not troubled at the fewness of your number: for out of one or two that shall be perfect in their

generation, a Strange Generation may proceed, who shall all be Mighty Warriors for God and the Lamb, to follow Him in trampling down all earthly powers. Keep but up to your leaders and you need fear no ill: for invisible Seraphims shall still pitch a mighty pavilion round about you.

[2F 10:8] §.Thus ended this revelation from the vision I had seen: which left a sweet perfumed sense of love, peace, and joy to feed upon.

## MARCH 20, 1677
## QUEEN ESTHER

[2F 10:9] §.Another idea was presented to me from the history of *Ahasuerus* and *Vashti,* his first espoused queen, who by her act of disobedience to her Royal Consort, was banished from his Throne. This Word sounded through me with great power: Among the captives shall a Virgin Queen be found that shall be crowned in the room of *Vashti.* Then I saw one in the similitude of a Woman clothed with scarlet, which was said: This is one of Wisdom's household: Who but she for the King of the *New Jerusalem,* whose garment is of an unstainable dye?

[2F 10:10] From this the Spirit made use of the whole literal discourse of *Ahasuerus, Vashti,* and *Esther*. The Most High Majesty hereby figuring out Himself, having created and made for the excellency and glory of His Kingdom, according to the state of so wise and infinite a being; that so He might take pleasure in all the glory and riches of His Kingdom, or creation, being all made perfect and good; and high princely Angels and powers for attendance: as also creating one more noble image as male and female, who was in Election to be advanced to very high dignity, no way inferior to any princely spirit in the Angelical figure. But now the sovereignty of the Most High resolved to try his new formed creature with a Law of Restriction, as from the Lord their Maker and Husband, who might well expect a ready and punctual obedience; who *Vashti*-like was disobedient to the great King's command, and so thereby was turned into an earthly *Eve,* and immediately banished out from the High Throne Presence. For else it would have been an ill precedent if God should not thus have done; the Heavenly Hierarchy might have questioned God’s immutability, and thereby have taken advantage to deviate from those known Angelical Laws, which the great Creator had to them prefixed.

[2F 10:11] Thus much was opened of this Original *Eve,* from where the contradicting and slighting *Vashti*-Spirit proceeds. The True Virgin’s life, which the first formed man was once in, is now as to him and all of his posterity, carried away as a captive, and sold for naught. For this Virgin Nature was wholly taken away upon this act of disobedience; who though thus made to fly from the earthly man, yet she is in safe and sure custody, to bring her forth again in the most needful and seasonable time; which will be when you see the pride and stately insolence of *Vashti*’s Spirit generally grown so high in the world, for contempt and neglect of those superior and Paradisical Laws, which by God the Creator, were upon all enjoined. But now being by all universally forfeited, what is now decreed to be done? Why, *Vashti,* who has wrought all this evil, and works still in everyone, must depart from the Crown Dignity, and no more appear near the Throne of the Majesty of Holiness, but evermore be counted as dead to the Eternal Royalty.

[2F 10:12] Then heard I this voice sound, saying, Come, come, a Virgin Mate must be found for the King. Search and see. She must be found among the Children of the Captivity; one more excelling for beauty, amiableness, wisdom, and meekness, humility, love, and patience, than any other; by which endowments, the true Virgin Queen, that is allotted to be in *Vashti*’s room, shall be

known. For such a one is in the Eye of the great and mighty *Ahasuerus,* for to find favor and kindness. Then it was further shown me, that such a one so excellently qualified in all perfection of holiness, is to be admitted into the Bosom of the Most Holy. That she would have hereby great opportunity to plead for the liberty of the Captive Seed. This wise Virgin I now saw in a figure, that she, by council with the upright *Mordecai,* brought to pass great and mighty deliverance, according to the literal similitude.

[2F 10:13] Now then, the true *Mordecai*'s Spirit is that which was still in unity with *Esther,* without whom she would do nothing. Whereby it is worthy to be observed, that where two spirits are thus in harmony, upon a high and spiritual account, there is great force and strength united to a blessed success: both ways considered, as each one having a *Mordecai* counseling Spirit within themselves; or distinct, as in a person without; both of which are of great service in the work of the Lord. Some rules were given to her who is to succeed *Vashti,* so that she might gain esteem and favor with the King: as first a childlike innocence, and humble simplicity, and staid sobriety, which may render her as a blushing Bride of virginity, all pure and fair as the Lily. Such a one will be most meet to represent and personate the Eternal Virgin, that so the Crown of Queen-like power might be set on her head. Then she may have access upon more equal terms to this mighty potent King. For herein lies the great privilege, that upon any straits or distress as may happen, this worthy *Esther* knows whither to repair, having both the heart and ear of that Mighty One, who has dominion everywhere. She knowing her times, seasons, and cause is just, for which she makes her application.

[2F 10:14] Here also I was incited from this history to take notice of the state of this *Ahasuerus,* who had a court and attendance for himself, and another for his Queen, with her attendance. Even so the High and Holy One has two Most Holy Courts, for purity, and heavenly state. The one is the great palace *Shushan,* which represents the *Jerusalem* state of glory; the other is the celestial all-springing Paradise, provided for the Virgin Queen, and her most honorable women; where she, that principal one in whom the King delighted, is often sent for to see, and to be honored among that High Assembly. She at no time is disobedient to her Lord's command, but rejoices to be admitted to every Spiritual Feast: and then again by reciprocal Love invites also her Lord and King to banquet with her of such fruits, as she well knows will please him; so that there is no end of Love's Commerce. This Chaste and Loyal Bride loves not, if it might be permitted, to make one meal without her beloved King. She admits none into her secret courts but such grave *Mordecai's,* and such as are virgins like unto herself. The *Haman* once or twice intruded with the King, which alludes to the invading Serpent Seed, of which the wise and prudent *Esther,* with her *Mordecai,* did foresee the danger, and the subtle plot for eternal ruin; and therefore wisely grounded themselves, first in the love, favor, and good will of their King.

[2F 10:15] Even so, do imitate the examples of these Worthy Ones: observe all things as in the history, so in the lively track of the Mystery. Let it be your grand design to ingratiate yourselves in this your captive state, with the mighty potences in Heavenly Places: act each one both these parts. Oh *Mordecai!* If you know anything of treachery or dishonor against your Lord the King, be faithful to bring it before Him, that when need is, it may be remembered; for hereby the Virgin Seed in time shall rise to promotion. Oh *Esther!* Maintain that love and favor which you have obtained. Hold fast what you have received of that Love Pledge. Prepare often in your Paradisical mind that which may please and have influence upon your mighty sovereign Lord. Be sure to maintain all intimacies: for verily the day is not only coming, but now is, when both *Mordecai* and *Esther* shall have occasion to set a work the utmost interest they have, both for themselves and for a Scattered

Seed, with the great King; to give sealing power for confirmation and justification, in a wonderful way: as also decrees to reverse and change what seems so unalterable in the visible state of things among the oppressed captives. Here now somewhat of Wisdom's Book is opened. Seek the right eye salve that so you may plainly read these things, and make high and spiritual use of them, that *Esther's* good day may overtake you.

## MARCH 22, 1677
## VISION OF THE GAINSAYING SPIRITS*

[2F 10:16] §.In the night, as I was waiting in my accustomed solemn retirement, for what might further be administered: I was cast as into a Magical Sleep. I saw myself carried into a Wilderness, where I saw only pleasant, pastoral walks and trees, which much suited with my mind and inclination there to walk; where I found nothing to disturb my superior meditations. In which place I promised myself opportunity, as not willing that either my name or place should be known to any, saving one. But while I was thus pleasured in my reserved state, I suddenly saw one that was known to me, walking very strait and upright, with a book reading in his hand. He seemed to be as one that would not look awry. But it was said presently that this person was a spy. Then presently two more appeared of the female sex, both which made a kind of assault upon me: But one of the females was more fierce, and gave my outward skin a prick, as with a sharp needle. Upon which I called for Angelical aid to succor me, or else they would be too hard. Whereupon I was parted from them, and saw them in that place no more, a voice saying: None shall here come, but such as can agree to walk with you perfectly. And so the vision broke up.

### The Interpretation

[2F 10:17] §.Some days after, I further inquired into the fuller meaning of this vision, *Why such should so conspire against my solitary reserved life: but especially that one who was in my eye of more value, because of a known life of truth and integrity?* I found this written upon my heart: Their eyes must for a while be withheld; they will not know you, till you can get the New Name engraved, as of Precious Stones upon your Forehead. For it was secretly whispered to my spirit, that in some there might be a refined and spiritual emulation, as in others a more gross and sensual. Both of which I had counsel and caution how to walk with; so as no occasion of stumbling might be given justly to the gainsaying spirits: whose pryings were to see how we would walk, while in the Wilderness State: out of which we were not to come, till our beloved Lord should bring us forth, as in another form; wherein me might be known as those who are to live in another sphere, where neither the Hissing Serpent, or Biting Adder will adventure to appear in that highway, where nothing which is unclean can pass. It is only for those who have held out the Wilderness Probation, waiting in faith, love, and patience; till the Jubilee Year, in which the Ransomed shall go forth out of their solitary place, into the *New Sharon:* where the glory and excellency of their God, as a Circling Sapphire-Bow, will be for their defense.

## MARCH 23, 1677
## THE CROWN OF ANOINTING*

[2F 10:18] §.This Word spoke with great majesty: *Behold I come quickly. Hold fast that which you have.* Upon which I considered what that thing was, which was to be held so fast. This Word then opened itself in great force and consequence to me: for I was in great suspense among the many Gifts received, what most primarily should be taken care of, among those things which were entrusted with

me. Still my spirit was harping hereupon, waiting for a clear resolve, which this morning was given to me by a distinct Word passing through me, saying: *Hold fast that which is my witness in you*, as the Gift of Revelation and Prophesy: which bind fast by the Girdle of Faith, or else it may be wrested from you. For you are not freed from the Serpent's conspiracy, who by all subtlety would circumvent my anointed Prophets, by mixing and casting in what is not of my Spirit's pure intent. Now then be watchful, lest that High Spirited Wine, which flows so readily from the Eternal Vine, should be either adulterated or stopped in its flowing Source. Therefore take this following rule from your Holy Watcher, and thereby you shall be able to keep the Crown of Anointing upon your heads, despite the Serpent's rage.

## MARCH 24, 1677
## DEATH IN THE POT*

[2F 10:19] §.To you then, to whom this worthy portion of Prophesy and Revelation is given, as what you are to keep and hold fast till your Lord shall come, it will be expedient to observe this rule. Take this counsel that *Elisha* gave the Prophet's Widow that had out-run all her living: furnish your house, and stock it well with choice vessels of all kind, that are fit for reception; washed and rinsed with the scented Water of Life. Let no other furniture be within the mansion-house of the Great Prophet, but set all in order, rank by rank, and expel every other thing. Taking the authority also to stop all of the nether sensual springs; and a way is to be found out to cut off those pipes, through which the muddy brackish water of strong scented Reason issues out. For if at any time, while this Pure Oil is running, this should happen therewith to mingle, it would be like that herb in the pottage, which made the sons of the prophets, to cry there was *death in the pot.*

[2F 10:20] Therefore obey this counsel, when you have brought in all those vessels that have been tried as gold in the Celestial Fire of God's Love, faithfulness and truth. Then use your skill to suspend and stench the bleeding of that old degenerated vine; which when your obedience herein is readily fulfilled, then to you will be given that precious, blood Ruby-Stone, that will eternally put a stop thereto. But at present, all care and diligence is charged upon you, that a restraint may be put according to your present ability, to all those sprouting essences, which are contrary to the Paradisical nature.

*Here is a break for several days in the original.*

# Chapter 11

## APRIL 8, 1677
## THE SEVEN PRINCIPLE SHEPHERDS

[2F 11:1] §.This Word I was reminded of, as a Prophesy to be fulfilled in this Last Age of time: Rejoice, O souls, in what I am about to do; which is to create New Heavens in your old Earth; to change it into a spiritual frame and model, wherein the Holy Ghost, that I will send down, shall evermore abide and dwell: then shall you bear the name of *Immanuel.*

[2F 11:2] Now it is to be understood the reason why the Holy Ghost could not transform the soul before, into its first Original Purity, was because the New Heavens were not yet framed: which represents a mind renewed, and a heart purified. For that Scripture was opened to me, *If Christ be risen in you, then sin has no power over you, but its body sinks and dies away.* For till the Body of Sin be laid, there can be no assuming of a Celestial Body, at least for duration. Then again the Great Prince and Shepherd had another design, to gather up holy, choice spirits, which had lived in mortal bodies, to come up after Him, to make up the *Mount Sion* Church in the invisible heavenly sphere. And those that have kept fast the Word of Truth in patience, and have fought the good fight of faith; if that they die in the warfare, they shall lose nothing of what they have so far wrought; there is a reservation and a place for such, to perfect what is lacking.

### The Upper Fold

[2F 11:3] §. For Christ Himself did not go out of the body into the highest Mansion of Glory, but He first entered Paradise. So likewise those whom the Father has given to Him, must, whether in the body or out of the body, make their first remove there, to be fully made meet, to be gathered up to the Fountain-Head of all springing wisdom and glory. There is a known number to make up the Flock for this Upper Fold; whereof are the Patriarchs, Prophets, and Apostles, who are nominated to be Elders among that Great Assembly; who are moved out of Paradise to sit in heavenly places, with their Head Prince and Mediator. To which Holy Place there are some holy and perfect spirits in every age added, as Saints breaking away from this principle.

### The Elias Spirit

[2F 11:4] §.This now is a Dispensation of that time mentioned, of a gathering in of heavenly spirits to Christ, out of the reformed Paradise. But there is yet a fuller time and Dispensation to come, that shall answer to the *Jerusalem* above, which is said to come down. Here is a Mount *Sion* Church to be gathered out from among all churches of men, by the preparing ministry of an *Elias* Spirit, who is to make ready against the Lord's return from that Solemnized Wedding with the present Triumphant Church. Now what is meant by this *Elias* Spirit, but such a Spirit as has power to transform and translate at pleasure. This *Elias* is not an abstracted ghost, but is in conjunction with a Flaming Body of Light. This was that which the Apostles eyed much in their days, and had the revelation thereof; but it was reserved for the latter ages. This pure abstracted ghostly power came upon them, and did great things through their own bodies, but did not work to the height of a ghostly body; for then mortality would have been over-clothed with celestiality: therefore it was reserved for a future season.

This Apple is not yet fallen upon any one, but is growing to the full golden color, to give a full body and spirit to them: for whosoever shall eat of this Golden Apple shall be transmuted into a Body as of fine Gold. And so whoever shall first partake hereof, the *Elias* Spirit will soon operate, to translate them from terrestrial things.

[2F 11:5] Then was this question with me, *But who of all flesh living now shall personate this great Elias, or ever come to see his day?* There have been many various visions and prophesies, and many persons tending hereunto, both in former and present times. But Oh, dearest Lord! When and how, and upon whom shall this be accomplished, seeing all are so universally slow of heart to believe? To know positively I dare not will, lest I should grieve the Holy Spirit, remembering that rebuke which Christ gave, when His disciples asked whether He would at that time restore the Kingdom; who did not seem to be pleased that they urged the thing so closely. Which made me sober upon the like occasion; though through the vision and revelation upon it, I had some temptation to encroach upon that, which is said to have the mind of *Jesus:* which had its times and seasons, which waiting upon, great things might be revealed. And accordingly this Word in way of answer, sprang freely in me: Go your way, in that measure and portion of Spirit received, and wait as *Elias* under the *Juniper Tree;* which signifies a Paradisical preparation: from which tree all sweet scents do flow, as the Holy Gusts thereupon blow; Which will send in that which will give a rich and pleasant smell to your God, in order to somewhat else. Oh, who but those that are of an *Elias* Spirit, that are weary and make complaint of their mortal terrestrial state, and would know a Transmutation, are fit for this which is here prophesied of?

### Seven Principal Shepherds

[2F 11:6] §.Then again this Word was spoken to me, that the Great *Melchizedek* King, who has charge over the Household of Faith, designs that before His own personal manifestation in the world, to depute and raise up some who shall be as the Seven Principal Shepherds: to go forth in the power and Spirit of *Elias,* to turn the heart back again of the vagrant lost Prodigal Children to the Father of their Eternal Spirits; and thereby to reconcile the two different principles: that the *Enochian* state may be revived for a free walking with God, by the light of the One Eternal Day, to pass in and out; not making reflect on upon this course material body, being supernaturally clothed upon with that which gives holy boldness to appear in that most pure sphere. Thus the *Enoch* and *Elias* Spirit are to arise upon some, who will mutually together agree to break through this vile principle; though it be with mountains rending, and with rocks breaking, and earth quakings: All which make way for the dividing from that low terrestrial state, to incorporate with the very body of God.

[2F 11:7] As to this query, the Spirit has only to say further thus: Do not put far away this day through fear and unbelief, but turn into the Mystical Paradise, and under the *Juniper* Tree bemoan your disappeared Virgin Bodies; which sweet unknown solitude, attend for its restoration. While you abide here, the Angelical powers shall minister spiritual fare to strengthen you, for what is further to be accomplished by you. If you will hereunto fixedly wait, then also given may be the deep Magical Book; in which Wisdom's Spirit will make you skillful in the Circling Planets, pertaining to that Invisible Element, which governs all belonging to the *New Jerusalem,* with all its inhabitants there. Now then as any shall desire in *Enoch*'s and *Elias*' Spirit to break away from this Terrestrial Globe, let them faithfully obey this deep revelation, with the counsel hereunto annexed.

## APRIL 10, 1677
## THE REVELATION OF THE HOLY ELEMENT

[2F 11:8] §.As I was in my bed, contemplating the unknown and invisible Orb of Glory, longing for a body with which I might have entrance thereinto: while I was thus deeply musing, there first appeared to me a Bright Cloud, which gathered itself into a Round Compass. Then it opened into various colors, wonderful splendorous with numerous stars: which were only discernible, as they did not so visibly appear, because the brightness overclouded them. In the midst of this, did suddenly break forth somewhat like the figure of an Eye, which looked terrible, piercing through all, with flaming streams round it, which were transcendently glorious. Upon which I could not steadfastly look, till I had closed my mortal eyes: which then for some space of time, I did behold, and then it vanished in the twinkling of an eye: then opening to see whether I could bear the glory of it, it retired out of sight with this word, *What flesh can live in this refining element?*

[2F 11:9] Then answered my Spirit, True, O Lord: therefore the destruction of it I would see, that I may come to live with you in these *new Heavens.* Why dearest Lord is this Crystalline Orb of Light let down only for view, if we may not partake something of the nature of it? How is it that we have been so long lodged out of the sight of you in this remote principle? If it must still be, how can this vile terrestrial state be grateful to spirits, who did pre-exist in you before all worlds; coming now to understand what is their true Eternal Dignity; to live in such lucified bodies, free and unclogged of corporeity? After I had thus presented our deplorable condition, through the sight and sense of what was in the idea of my Spirit, I could not but move this question to my Sovereign Creator, *Why such a pure spirit, generated out of the highest and super excellent matter, should unite with such course, mean, corporal forms, acted by a mortal, sensual, rational soul, that governed it by the Starry Region?*

[2F 11:10] To this deep question, the Spirit gave this answer readily: That the immense Deity did hereby prepare high and worthy ends, in sowing pure spirit into corruptible flesh. As first for its probation, it comes into such bodies to exercise, and to put forth its superior might, for mortifying, and to correct and check all the natural propensity; which the mortal spirit would tempt that which is eternal, to join with it in; the which not yielding to, but maintaining its own superiority, in curbing and suppressing all of the earthly part, God is hereby greatly pleased, and highly honored. Therefore think not much that for the present there is such incongruousness between that which is intellectual, and that which is terrestrial; that which is eternal may command and subdue all whatever is temporary. Therefore be not ignorant of your own spirit's sovereignty, but call up its true authority, for the spiritualizing of what would be clouded with sensuality. For if you yield hereunto and are overcome, then your Talent lies as dead and buried. And what account can any such give to their Lord when He comes, who are thus slothful? Therefore that Parable (consider of it) about the Talents improving, had a very deep meaning: if you should not be faithful in the first stock of life and Spirit, you must not expect that more high and full trust, and latter crop, both Ghostly Spirit and Body Celestial, will be given. Therefore be patient, hold out, and do the present work of the day, and know your reward is not far from you.

### Interpretation of this Vision

[2F 11:11] Then was the Vision of the Holy Element opened to me: The Bright Airy Cloud, which gathered itself into a round compass, and was mixed with flame colors so subtle and pure; this was said to be the matter of all Celestial Bodies: and those Innumerable Stars, which were veiled under the bright cloud, were naked spirits, that ascended out of bodies terrestrial into this pure element, and put on figurative bodies bright and ethereal, corresponding to the nature of the Star-like Sparkling Spirits, who appeared to be fixed in this Pure Element. Then further as to that Majestical Eye, which

appeared so terribly piercing: it was shown me, nay, the Spirit plainly in a still voice echoed in me, that from this pure Eye all distinct Sparks of Life proceeded, and flew into mortal bodies, according to the hour of life, and came piercing into the fleshly womb, there to unite with a corporeal spirit, which is naturally introduced from *Adam*'s lapsed day.

[2F 11:12] Then was a secret whispered into that ear, which stood open to hear what the Spirit dictated so near, saying: Have you not read that one Star differs from another in glory, and one Angel is more mighty and powerful, and greatly dignified than others, yet all are of and from that pure Eye extracted? Even so further learn and receive, that in the productions of spirits there is great difference; some greater, and more deeply comprehensive, and intelligent, and strong to encounter with the averse matter to which they are united; For know that this prerogative of will is to be left free with God, who is the Fountain of all Spirits, and is not here to be called to account by His creatures. He gives spirits successively to bodies, according to what more eminent and extraordinary work He has for them to act and do in the lower region of this world. Therefore God has left Himself this liberty, to give to one five talents, and to another but two, or one. But if to that one, any shall be faithful to improve it while he lives in this body, doubt not but it is of very dear acceptation with their Lord, to enter into his joy, though somewhat different according to the Spirit's degree.

[2F 11:13] Thus *Abraham* and *Lot* were both from a pure righteous seed, yet *Abraham*'s Spirit of Truth did much excel. And so you may recollect innumerable instances throughout all ages: as *Enoch, Moses, Joshuah, Elias,* who had answerably great service to do for their God, though so unsuitably matched by bodies. Yet such was the greatness of their spirits, as they made their very terrestrial man to keep pace with their spirits. Nay, such is the power and ability of an Eternal Spirit, through piercing into its original center, that it may attract and clothe itself with the inward Virgin Body; which is the matter of that Pure Element, which you did see; and so for Times and Seasons, the gross nature sublimated and overpowered, may be as oft of this kind, as was formerly; according to the might and potency of the Spirit existing in bodies; as this was shown in your Lord Jesus, both before and after His resurrection.

[2F 11:14] Now what does this vision predict, but the clothing of some great Saints with this Pure Element; who often withdraw from the corporeal sense. Oh, who can tell what is here to be enjoyed but such as slide away from this vile earthly climate? The Seven-Star Planets will be given into their hands, the influences of which are all of pure ghostly inspiration, to outset and overthrow the earthly gross element, which so long has prevented the Heavenly Community. Now then, dive into your own celestiality, and see with what manner of spirits you are endued: for in them the powers entirely lie for transformation.

[2F 11:15] §.From the foregoing revelation, it was fully cleared unto me for what cause pure spirits, which proceeded from the Holy Being, came to exist in mortal vehicles: It was not for any sin or transgression which they acted or did in the times of their pre-existence in any ethereal region, as some believe, being bare abstracted spirits, without any figurative bodies. Only Adam and Eve may be considered as the whole universe, and all included in them, as the representative heads of all successive generations, who were mortalized after their similitude; For which cause, sin, and curse, and death entered, but none shall be condemned for Adam's transgressions: for shall not the Judge of all the Earth do and pass righteous judgment? Shall any suffer for what they could no way avoid? God forbid. As all men and women were conceived and born in sin, so likewise in a Seed of Truth and Righteousness, which is invisibly introduced, to destroy and overpower the Serpently Seed; both growing up together, which of them obtains the mastership, does remain in each one's principle; the most wise God having laid in a sufficiency of Spirit, who in the days of Noah said, My Spirit in them

was tired out, striving still with them, so God will clear and acquit Himself of all of this nature that can be charged upon Him.

[2F 11:16] Then further it was opened unto me from that Scripture, *That as sin has abounded, grace shall much more abound.* This grace was revealed in the gift or infusion of the Spirit of Christ, as the Promised Seed of restoring life unto *Adam* and *Eve,* upon their very degeneration; that they might not be as without God, in that corporeal image which they were now changed into. If the Eternal Word, which was from the beginning, had not been their Light and Life, and so likewise generative to their future posterity, they would have been in the same condemnation with the fallen Angels. But the Eternal Word even then did incarnate Himself, for their help and recovery, and to save them from sinking into that horrible Lake which the Serpent had prepared for them. Thus did the Eternal Love immediately move towards them, to free them out of the Dragon's power; whose design was to make them of their own hierarchy, in their princely power of darkness, out from which the Lamb of God redeemed them; who from the foundation of the world was the salvation of God, so still going on to the ends of the Earth.

[2F 11:17] But while this new thing sprang in my understanding, which seemed to differ from what I had formerly received as truth, I besought the Lord my teacher to answer this objection that was raised thereupon: *That if so immediately upon Adam's fall the Eternal Word (who is the New Birth-Seed) did incorporate with* Eve, *whereby power and ability were given to bring forth wholly after the Spirit, how was it then that she should, and did, bring forth after the fleshly image, as appeared by the First Man, which she brought forth in the wrathful property first awakened?* In answer to this I found light at hand to resolve me, as thus: It did not seem good to the wise Creator to obliterate, and so presently to wipe off the stain, with which they had blemished themselves by the act of disobedience. Some marks of displeasure did the Most Holy still include them under: as a terrestrial body; and to bring forth in travail and sorrow, what should have been by magical power and joy, in celestial angelical forms: but now as the effects of disregarding the command of God, they brought forth a mean and despicable image, according to their own likeness.

[2F 11:18] But then I further queried, *But this corporeity might have been sinless, if original righteousness was also infused, by the Immortal Spark of Life entering in, to incorporate with the outward Elementary Birth. That Spirit which had so pure an existence, and was in free liberty, should come into a necessitated thralldom, as in Cain was manifested.* As to this I also obtained satisfaction, that *Cain* had the Eternal Light of Life with him, that forewarned him, and convinced him of the end and danger of sin; and that he was under probation, and that the Serpent had liberty still to tempt anew, suitable to the condition he was fallen into. Who had an absolute liberty of will and sufficiency of power to stand his ground, as God said to him by way of reproof, *If you do well, shall you not be accepted; but if not sin lies at your own door;* which plainly declares that *Cain* should not have yielded himself sin's captive. So that in all temptations you may know where to fly, even to that Eternal Word within you: who is mighty to save, who is and was from the beginning, the First and the Last, visible and invisible, deity in humanity, and deity out of humanity; all making and tending to the fulfilling and manifestation of the Mystery which has been hid in the Trinity; which *Arcanum* will be daily revealing in this latter age.

### The Necessity of a Personal Savior

[2F 11:19] Then arose a further query to be answered: *If Christ as a Seed of Life was infused into every individual birth throughout the line of terrestrial propagation, whereby a sufficiency was found to bear down and overcome what the Serpent had introduced of this venom and Sting of Sin and*

*Death: what further need was there of Christ to assume a body, and to be proclaimed in the world as a personal Savior, by and through the offering up Himself as a propitiatory sacrifice for sin, if it could have been expiated by the production of Internal Light and Life, thus originally springing according to that Scripture, Christ the Light of everyone that comes into the world?* As this is a weighty and considerable question, so it shall be resolved from that which sees into the first ground of what comes to be manifested in time. Now then for these reasons it was expedient for Him who was nominated the Second Person in the Trinity, to be exhibited in a corporal form upon this account.

[2F 11:20] §.*First:* To declare the possibility of bringing in and acting forth an everlasting righteousness in frail human nature, which every way was beset and assaulted with temptations from all dark powers; which from their evil center conspired to overturn truth and fidelity in this Immaculate Lamb; for had the Dragon prevailed upon him here, Mount *Sion* and the Heavenly *Jerusalem* should never have been revealed.

[2F 11:21] §.*Secondly:* Then again for this cause Christ was to be manifested in flesh, in god-like power: as very needful to become that great High-Priest, to atone and make expiation for the sins and defectiveness under the First Covenant, which was given in *Paradise;* all since having sinned after the similitude of *Adam*'s transgression. The Holy Seed in them, being weak through the body which is included, and falling under the gross element: which has and does in some much more than others, choke and smother the life, and greatly clouds and darkens universally this Pure Light, whereby the good part rarely gets the victory in any, till they attain to a good degree of illumination and purification. For this Spring of Light gets through but by degrees: for though in itself it's of great potency, yet need enough there is, for sins committed in the times of ignorance and minority; before the Spirit comes, to make the soul understand itself, from what it is relapsed: I say, for the remission of these sins past through the forbearance of God, not less than such a sacrifice was your Jesus to become for you.

[2F 11:22] §.In the *third* place: Then as Christ fulfilled all righteousness in His humanity, for an example to His fellow brethren, so they might come to the unity of the same perfect life, by the same perfect Spirit which was in Him through the dying life: for thereby your Lord Jesus obtained a superadditional force and power of Spirit, to give and shed abroad into you, for working out a full liberty and salvation. For seeing His pure Life-Seed was under oppression, He also came into a body of flesh, to relieve and free it from the bondage of sin and evil, and also the very mortality antecedent thereunto; according as it is written, *Delivering them, who through fear of death, were all their lifetime subject to bondage:* which no way could be effected, but by death destroying death: First in the human figure of your Lord Jesus, who hereby showed you the way to do Mystically, that so thereby you might escape the Second Death, through the resurrection which is said to quicken mortal bodies.

[2F 11:23] §.*Fourth* place: Now then further consider, that this was the very great and primary end of Christ coming into a body of flesh: to transfigure and to show the way of immortalizing it, as He did His own after His resurrection, when He ascended into the Kingdom of His Father. Then this was also noted to me that had not Christ come down into a body, the highest Saint could have attained no higher state than Paradise; though endued with all the internal excellency from the Word of Life, as a seed incorporating with it. For their highest dimensions was *Adam*'s Paradise, beyond which region neither Patriarchs nor Prophets did arrive before Christ's appearing in the world. Therefore you see that Christ, embodying Himself in a terrestrial form, brought forth many considerable advantages: if they may now be considered by the wise hearted, so as to wait and expect the fruits of that additional Spirit, that is some degrees higher than any Seraphic flame of light. Believe and know that this Breath of Fire breathed and sucked in, will melt away all your gross metalline corporeity.

# Chapter 12

## APRIL 18, 1677
## THE TRUE SHUNAMMITE

[2F 12:1] §.As soon as I awaked in the morning this Word spoke in me: What is to be done for you? Would you be spoken for to the King? This Word I pondered often upon, what should be the meaning hereof, and for what intent it did so speak; which after some days was thus resolved: That such who are signatured with spiritual generosity and largeness of Love, answerably to that *Shunammite,* who was so careful of *Elisha,* as to provide for his entertainment; even so would Christ the true Spirit of Prophecy be grateful unto them, who have such a proof of love and esteem for Him, as to furnish out a Most Holy separate Place for this Prophet still to turn in into.

[2F 12:2] First, it was given me to observe that this *Shunammite,* as she understood him to be a man of God, gave him great reverence, and would not lodge him in her own mixed family; as judging none there worthy of his conversation. Therefore she purposely built a place of apartment for vacancy, that this holy seer might have opportunity for inquiry with the Deity: therefore she took care he should not be disturbed. Then further this Word came unto me, as not only for council but for information: that knowledge was taken of such a true *Shunammite,* who was in council with her Eternal Mate, that had prepared for this Spirit of Prophecy a most holy inward place, according to this similitude; with true spiritual furnishings of what was necessary to tempt this true searching Seer to take up here his abode.

[2F 12:3] Then was it shown me what I did not know to be in myself so clearly, thus figured out distinctly by way of allegory. First, a new edifice was purposely framed by the wise Master Builder in us; Then a Table-heart in which the Law of Love was written; Then a Bed to give ease and rest to our Beloved, that He might not be as a wayfaring man. Know this in each of us, so furnished out as His own home, where we might retire to Him in the light and spring of understanding: which is the Candlestick and Candle fixed in us before-hand, without which no comfortable abode for this Prophet would be in us. Then again, the Stool signifies a quiet fixation with us, without weariness, a blessed contentment. That there is but one seat shows that here is an excluding of all other out of this place. The *Elisha* Spirit admits none to sit with him in his lodging: for this sitting or waiting posture is proper for the spiritual diviner, that night and day may minister hereupon.

[2F 12:4] Upon this I received an approbation or sealing Word, for good hope and rich consolation to us, who could witness that large generosity of Spirit in Love to this Prophet, before whom we are called to stand; who did put indeed and verify this question a second time to me, saying, What shall be done for you, who have cared all this care for me, in giving me a place of apartment, where nothing might mingle with me? Tell me now, what I shall speak on your behalf, whether to the King, or Captain of his Host? The King here represents God the Father, the Captain your Lord Jesus, the *Elisha*-Spirit the Holy Ghost. Either of them both can be heard at all times. Therefore see that you be free in humility with your Prophet.

[2F 12:5] Now having such a grant made to me, I consulted how to act the part of a wise *Shunammite*. Though from here I could and might take great liberty, yet I am taught to weigh all my request, that nothing rash or unadvised may proceed from me. Oh my Lord and great Prophet, I cannot compare with the *Shunammite* in all things, who said that she was in her own land and people. But we may be said to be on some account as exile captives, while living in elementary bodies; also in a land under Babylonish tribute, which is very grievous to the supernal part; who knows its own True Nativity, as seeing through the Glass of Eternity, what we once were in pre-existence. But now as existing in forms of mortality, it cannot be said that we need nothing further, in the highest degree of this terrestrial state.

[2F 12:6] Therefore in blushing fear and holy modesty, I did declare the sense hereof to my Prophet, if now my Lord will speak for this unto the great and mighty King, and Captain of the Lord's Host, that we may have release out of all Babylonish thrall, and be brought back again to our own people, to dwell in the Heavenly City; what greater express of kindness can be compassed for us by the Prophet? But the Spirit of *Elisha* replied to me: There is yet a greater thing that must go before it, of which you have made no mention; which is the One Pure Elementary Birth; for that which is born from beneath, of fleshly corporeity, can never be gathered among those Celestial Denizens, till immortalized with pure and Ethereal Bodies. Ah my Lord, if so, what hopes can there be for us, who are so united unto this out-birth. Then said the Prophet, Be quiet and still, and after a while this pure Birth, that is all of Spirit, may freely spring, in which you will pass, where you so much long and desire to dwell.

[2F 12:7] But then this was further revealed, that many would be the cross-workings of this Worldly Element, therefore must we be very wary to avoid all minglings with it. For we stood here upon a very nice point; therefore know, and be only conversant with this God-man, from whom is diffused that which is of Pure Birth Impregnancy, that will excel in perfection all of former births. Yet, said the Prophet, consider further this: If you attain to this Birth, know while you are in this Principle, it is not out of all danger. Hazards do attend it, as in the case of the *Shunammite*, while but in the childish state. The four elements may specially be in strife against the life hereof, when the *Elisha*-power may be withdrawn. Therefore keep up all Love, and Sweet Correspondence with this Spiritual Prophet, that you may have a refuge in whatever may happen for present or future time, or may fall out upon you; making use of this His great friendship at all times, when need requires: who has a reviving Breath for Life still to inspire. So then according to what has been revealed, make use hereof in a wise and understanding spirit.

## APRIL 20, 1677
## VISION OF THE HAND*

[2F 12:8] §.I saw a vision which was thus presented: As the form of a Hand, which seemed to be grasped very close: out of which sprang a Living Creature, peeping through the fingers, and so by degrees did quite break through the fingers. First appeared the head, as in the likeness of a Young Dove; but the body was of the Color of a Ruby, having wings and fire-sparkling eyes: which as soon as it got through the hand, it mounted away as into the air, where I saw it no more. This thing seemed very strange to me, and for some days the meaning was concealed, having other ideas intervening wherein my intellectuals were exercised. But this being brought to remembrance, there was something considerable to be understood from it, as by the Spirit of Wisdom and Light was made out very significantly.

## The Interpretation of this Vision

[2F 12:9] §.As first by the Hand, which represents strength, power, and activity, as when God is said to do any marvelous or unusual thing, it still goes under the denomination of His Hand. As it was upon *Ezekiel,* when he was in the visions of God, his hand was said to be upon him. And again, the Hand of the Lord is not shortened, but said to be stretched out as a strong over-spreading hand. Therefore after the similitude of a hand the creating power goes forth, as in vision it was shown you, what in time might be affected.

[2F 12:10] Then this question was put to me: *What now do you believe that Living Creature to be, which was so wonderfully formed in the Hand*? Ah my Lord, I make no conclusion hereof: I wait singly to participate of your mind, whose sweet voice and sound I through your grace am learned in, and do hereunto attend. Therefore speak my Lord yet again. Then this Word passed through me, after the manner of a spirit's speech, saying, The Living Creature, which broke away through the Hand, figures out that which is of great import, as namely a Cherub-birth: whereof the *Elisha* Spirit has prophesied should be brought to pass, where the least expectation might be. As in the case of the *Shunammite,* who was strangely surprised when the Prophet did her greet herewith: even so unexpectedly will the Earth be blessed with such a birth that shall be hatched under the Mighty Hand of Power: which will ascend straightway to this mountain high.

[2F 12:11] And it was further hinted to me that as I could not see nor understand any matter contributed to be the substance of this Living Creature, so it must be here. Which as I was considering of in myself, that Scripture was struck upon me, *It is the Stone that is cut out, without artificial working, or known matter.* Therefore, said the Spirit, so consider of it: This is that Holy Breath, that none indeed can tell from where it comes or where it goes. It rests upon whom its wills, and there contracts incorporeal matter; that so a body Cherub-like may go forth from under the Overshadowing Hand. Of such the New Heavens and Earth are henceforth only to be furnished withal. Therefore for certainty that Word will be made good, *Behold the face of all things will renew.* But how? No otherwise but by the powers that shall go forth from this Cherub-birth. That when once got through will numerate, as those mighty Angels of the Resurrection; who will be of great force to pour out the Vials of Wrath upon the Dragon and Beast, who has had his Root and Seat in man's inward part, and there has made all the defilement.

[2F 12:12] Therefore vengeance upon the Beast will be ere long taken, because he has been so mingled, not only with gross sensuality, but also with the Serpently property. That all now, who are herein found, who are designed for the Kingdom of Heaven, must suffer under the violation of this Blessed Birth, whose rising will be the fall of what is fleshly. For said He that makes all things, Yet once more an end is come of all flesh before me. A New Creation is to succeed out of, and from under the hiding power of the Almighty Hand, in such who are now clothed with this present creation, in such rough beast-like garments, whereof they are ashamed. Therefore it is, that such mean perishing coverings, which are not so much as moth-proof, they seek to make comely to each mortal eye. But here is a Birth of another nature and consistency, that neither needs nor will accept of any of this vile matter from the grosser elements; knowing well that coarse linen, which is spun out from there, will no way become such, as must pass into that city: which is so bright and clear; where nothing is worn but what is Ethereal and Transparent. The light there is such as soon makes a discovery of what is contrary. Then said my Spirit, Ah my Lord, you have spoken of great things to come. Happy is that age that shall see such a Birth-day as this.

[2F 12:13] But this question, my dear Lord, resolve to me, which is this: *What has made this Spiritual Birth thus long to stick in the world? Answer:* Because this out-birth, by way of natural generation, has now had such a long circling life, in the deep impression of the stars; that it is rooted as a strong oak, that would give way to no other, but to the Flaming Ax of this Birth of the Spirit. Which by reason of long custom and habit, is grown too stubborn and strong for the young plant-seed to deal with it; it meeting with many disadvantages, both as to place, and persons, and constitution of things in and from this principle; so that it need be no wonder that this Birth find such difficulty in any to get through. But this Old Oaky Birth shall not be only lopped by degrees; and the Root of the matter left still to spring, from generation to generation, in those who are allotted for Redemption. No, Jesus will not have it run by natural course to the end of time. Thus His Trumpet has already sounded, to awaken some that did as others sleep in the dust, that are risen to a better hope, seeking to be clothed with Immortal Robes: To such as first look and keep close under this Hand of Power, this Cherub-birth will appear; and then let not such fear that their Old Terrestrial Birth shall outwear their more superior and Heavenly Image. The wise in heart are given to understand these things: who are diligent to inquire when this Birth will be perfected.

## April 22, 1677
## The Mountain of Faith, and the City of Strength

[2F 12:14] §.About the break of day there appeared to me, as upon a mountain, a Stately Building of great fortitude and strength; it was compacted so within itself, as nothing by many miles could come near to it. All the situation of it was green and pleasant, but the ascent to it was so high, as it seemed impossible for any to come up thereunto, who had not the Wings of a Dove. Neither could I discern any road or pathway there. After this representation was passed away, leaving much thoughtfulness in me, I had for that present time this Word given to me: That this Separated Building was called the City of Strength. Some three nights after, as I was in a slumber, this high mountain appeared again: and I saw two persons beckoning out of that place to come up. Then I attempted to ascend or to walk up to them, but found my corporeity so weighty upon me, as I could not by any means at that present make it up there; which caused great anxiousness in me: for my will was very earnest to make it up to that desired place.

## April 23, 1677
## A Further Discourse upon this High Mountain

[2F 12:15] §.Upon which I moved my Lord, who was nigh in Spirit, Why such inviting ideas should so attract both heart and eyes? And yet no might or power to come up to that Holy Mountain, upon which this Glorious City stood: which would be strength and fortitude from all sufferings and evils, which while below this Mountain, we are obnoxious to. Upon which complaint the springing Word said: How is it that your soul is thus disquieted that you cannot possess so immediately what is made known to you in vision and prophecy? The ground hereof is known to Wisdom, who also will satisfy you, why this cannot yet be attainable.

[2F 12:16] §.First consider your present existence, that it is in a very low degree, inferior to the Angelical Sphere, nay hardly meet for what might be enjoyed in the Paradisical Orb. That pure leavening Unction has not gone through body, soul, and spirit, so as to change throughout into its own nature, which has hindered you: for nothing of corporeal matter could ever there ascend, though the will and Spirit put forth with great earnestness. But then again, be it given you to understand, that this presentation signifies the reviving the remembrance of what has been prophesied in foregoing ages.

For similitudes will go before to usher in the real thing. The preludiums of which have so long slept, that some fresh warnings hereof will be given to them that wait for and believe in their day, to see the Kingdom of God in its height of glory. As this City is a true figure hereof, which seems yet to be at a great distance from this low world, as to its mighty height. Which is a confirmation to that old prophecy, the mountain of the Lord's house is established above all mountains, and thereto will be the flowing of Dove Spirits, as to their own habitation.

[2F 12:17] From this a sweet and fresh manifestation, by way of a renewed prophecy, opened from those words, That it shall come to pass in the Last Days; and which thus spoke: That the lot of this fulfilling prophecy might be witnessed by some in this age. For which end, this transient Vision of the City was showed, to quicken and revive the hopes of those who were mourners to see themselves remote herefrom; because of the wonderful distance and height in the situation thereof: which caused such anxiousness through their own insufficiency to reach up there; as not seeing any possibility to come to God's Holy Palace, where only was our hoped for freedom.

[2F 12:18] §.But while I was in this demur and fear, a swift Messenger from this high and lofty place reached out his hand to me; and suddenly this house, which was so far off, was now to me as nigh. For I did see it pass by me, as in a clear glass-case, as if it had run upon a Chariot Wheel, so swift that I could only spy through the glass, a light transparent glory: which left me in no little concern, because not taken in hereinto. But that Word was spoken presently for support: You cannot follow now, but shall afterwards. Then did the Comforter commune of these things further unto me, revealing the Mystery of this City, as to its consistency.

[2F 12:19] Its building is of a threefold quality, as to the making out of its glorious variety. The *First* foundation-matter was all Sapphire-like, of such virtue and clarity, as it extracts the Jasper Stone, and so consequently the Ghostly Ruby, of which three this city is compacted. And is exalted above all degrees of created beings, that none can come to dwell here within this deified place; till a High Chemical Virtue proceeds from each Stone in this Building, for a separated operation. For these Stones will attract only out of the soul and spirit what is their own; therefore expect no less than Three Baptizing Fires to pass upon you, before you can be inhabitants in this Transparent City of Glass. The Sapphire, which is the Father's Fiery Property, operates in the Spirit of Salt's searching quality, to find out all corruptibility. Then *secondly* Christ, the Jasper-Light sends, out His warm fire Blood-Stone, both to purge, cleanse, and heal. Then the *third* dispensing power will let out such a Flood of Oil, of His own high perfumed nature, mingling all through the foregoing Celestial Fires in a blessed Light Flame, as will burn away the first gross elemental matter, which has prevented the Spirit's ascent into this Mountain of the Lord's House.

[2F 12:20] But however you draw near to the foot of this City-Mountain, which while you fit therein waiting, this very Mountain may melt and bow before you. And this City, which is called Everlasting Righteousness and Strength, will through its pure constellative virtue, exhale and draw you up into itself; where you will then ever be with the Deity in Beryl Flaming Bodies and Spirits, according to the Ghostly Purity of might, as those who are ready for this Spiritual and sudden flight.

# Chapter 13

## April 26, 1677
## The Cherubinical Birth

[2F 13:1] §.As I was considering the openings which I had of that vision relating unto the Cherubim-birth, which was hatched under the hand of the power: this query arose in me: *How the Spirit of this New Creature was sustained?* And which way it could draw in that food, that constituted it to be of that strength and excellency of Body, and Spirit, that it could mount away, as a Dove into an Unknown Orb? Ah, my Lord, what manner of Birth is this? Shall such a Birth ever be known to have existence in this Terrestrial Sphere? Sure such a Birth is only meet to be born where is a pure and unmixed element, which may not be in strife against it. For truly it is hard and very difficult for such a Birth to be nursed and brought up to perfection, where all things work cross, rising up against it. Because it is a Strange Child that bears not this world's image;

[2F 13:2] As for example in our Lord Jesus: His birth being extraordinary and marvelous, so soon as it was but noised abroad, counsel was taken to destroy Him. Nay He had much ado to live out His determined time; but as He preserved Himself by His inward virtual body upon every storm and assault. The world that lies in the evil of darkness could not bear such a Light to live amongst them, whose Life was that which reproved them; therefore it is no needless question to ask of the Most High Wisdom, How in this age such a birth may be succored and sustained, till it has got a body of might and fortitude, which no weapon can destroy or hurt. The resolve must be fetched up from the deepest of all centers, as it is a matter of the most primary consequence to them, who have such a birth in such a dangerous principle for to bring up; a birth which is from the power of the overshadowing hand.

[2F 13:3] For satisfaction to this query, the All-knowing Spirit said, Be it given you to understand, that every birth, of whatsoever kind, brings along with it, through the wise provision in nature, its own nutriment. That which is of corruptible seed has what answers to it, of its own perishing quality. What feeds on flesh, either as to its fleshly mind or body, shall suffer loss to purpose; though all the care be to prop and nourish it, to make it a well-favored piece of mortality; Which to the Most Holy is a strange similitude, which He has no delight to see, or know His own any longer in. Therefore He incites and calls to look after Another Birth; that may be all of quintessential matter, of the very Nature of the Deity.

[2F 13:4] Such a Pure Thing may have corporal humanity a while, for its visible case, as your Immanuel had assumed, as the Garment of Sackcloth; in which He humbled Himself for the sins of the world, and for that end sacrificed it: Who, though He took it up again, it was for the manifestation of greater wonders by it, through various changes, which it was made the subject of; For in that sometimes he was known, and then again in such a figure unknowable to them, who were daily conversant with Him. Who after that the pleasure and design of the Father was in that body finished, then the power of the inward Spiritual Body was manifested to anatomize the Visible Humanity, for that was not to pass into the Heavens: From all which, we learn to discern where the Christ-like Birth, with His Spiritual body is, though clouded with a corporeal figure. And that you may not be mistaken, take these Special Signs, to know where it is truly fixed or impressed.

[2F 13:5] §.First, know that this Overshadowing Hand, through which this Birth springs, encompasses only what is Paradisical ground: There it drops in its Golden Seed. This ground in its true Native Virgin Pureness, must be separated from the common cursed matter, of what produces the Earthly Birth. These two different soils are to be found in the First *Adam*'s generative offspring. But it is so mingled and overrun with the Dark Muddy Element, that great care, labor and painful industry is used for its recovery out, by the wise and learned Spirit in the Heavenly Chemistry, rightly to prepare for this Holy Birth; which will be easily known from the course and rudimental, that is in the image of the earthly.

[2F 13:6] §.For first, here is a Pure Conception, as from the high and pure radical infusive Spirit, that quickens the Virgin Soil, and so cooperates it into a Spiritual body, that it may be all of one and the same pure, clear, undefiled, subtle matter with the Quickening Spirit: that you may know, what that is, which contributes to the Christ-like births, wherewith it will be one and the same, that it may degenerate in nothing, from the first perfection and pattern of his life. But only this heavenly man may be excused from that personal suffering in the tragical part, as an outward death; Which will not be required upon the same account, having finished the Mystery of the Mystical Death, through this Birth taking place, and bearing dominion over the outward.

[2F 13:7] But now to resolve that question: *What this Birth that is from above, which is coagulated into one unmixed matter, must live upon in the house of humanity?* Which for a time it must be brought up in, as Christ Himself was, and tempted with the evil fruits that will be daily proffered from the market of this world, but yet in no danger, though in minority. For it is left under the Guardian Spirit, who warns it what to abstain from; whose nature and composition is of such heavenly essentiality, that it inclines naturally to obey the Paradisical Laws, which is the second character of this New Creature.

[2F 13:8] §.Then again in the *third* place, while but in its infancy, it will suck of no other but its Eternal Virgin-Mother. Lay it to any other and it will be sick to death. And if at any time contrary food is forced upon it, it presently vomits it up. Then, when grown to a further degree of strength, not only the pure Milk of Wisdom its Mother, those living precepts of her word, but the very Body of the Deity, which is the Spiritual Flesh Christ spoke of, and the Blood, the Milk of the Word. But when come to that age as able to take and feed upon that Body that is extracted out of the very being of all Eternal Spirits, of what kind must this be brought forth? But even such a Celestial Body, as Christ told them, could never taste of death. For as He did live by the Father, by feeding upon the very power of the God-head, so likewise that birth, which was of this extraction, should live eternally, by feeding itself upon His Divine Flesh. Your Fathers, said He, did eat manna and are dead, but I, the Bread of Life will sustain you, and thereby immortalize you, if you will feed upon no other but Me, the Tree of Life.

[2F 13:9] It was further revealed to me, that the mold and Paradisical matter was found in us, and brought out of all dispersions into one Holy Lump, formed and quickened by that pure Azure Stream or Breath, which presented itself by way of vision. And this, in process of time, might come to be no less than God manifested in our fleshly forms of corporieties. Therefore let us be careful and watchful over it, and to hide it under the sheltering hand of the Everlasting Power; forasmuch as it is enclosed with a terrestrial form as its house, where the light of the sun, moon and stars of this visible region did break in, and thereby would assume a government over it: which might bind and keep it under, as upon the outward elementary Spirit. This was my fear and jeopardy. Concerning which, the Everlasting Comforter did satisfy me, declaring, this was a Free Birth, not subject in any respect to

the rudiments of this world, because nothing of these essences did therewith mix. No depravity in the nature of sin was here infused. Therefore this Birth may stand upon its Royal Freedom; for to be born free from sin is a great and mighty thing. Therefore know your New Birth-prerogative, and come not under the power of what this Holy inspiring Breath is come to set at liberty from.

[2F 13:10] For the True Heir is a Son of Liberty, in bondage to nothing. When once he comes to know himself, he will then assume that sovereignty, which shall make the corporeal life bow unto him. Nay, as this increases and grows up to its Princely greatness, this land will be too strait. For out of *Egypt* God will call this his heir, through all terrestrial walls and gates, to come up unto that Free City, where the Trinity in Majesty will give out their Sealed Commissions, for what this Birth of might and excellency has further for them to do in this low region. For that which has been, as the high built Wall of Perdition, between these principles, and the mountain upon which the *New Jerusalem* stands, by such strong Angels as these, you shall see broken down without tool or weapon; and passage made, which the Eagle Eye of this Birth will espy, and will be so skillful, as to know its way through the cloudy air, to Mount Sion hill, the Mystery of God in both principles to fulfill.

## April 27, 1677
## Various Mansions and Regions of Separated Souls

[2F 13:11] §.In the morning, after the Doctor had prayed, I awaked and sank down into the Center of Life. And there appeared unto me a pure Azure Blue Stream, which was said in me, was that Spirit and Breath of Life, that must put the grosser element to flight. Then it was further opened to me that from this Perfect Thing would go forth an enriching mist that should renew the face of all things, in such whose inward ground was measured out by the Golden Reed of the Spirit. Then was further shown me the Twofold Nature and Property of this Breath: That as it could quicken and be a Seed of Life, in matter meetly prepared for it, so likewise this Breath would extinguish that life which works in contrariety against it; according as it is written, *Oh death, I will be your death.* When all conclusions be tried, for the expiation of the Earthly Birth, there is no other that can so eternally anatomize it: as the Body of Sin may be said to cease, and not to be, but by the Spirit of the Lord, blowing upon the fleshly form of it, which seems to be so goodly. Truly this Life has been too hard for all other weapons that have been tried upon it, since the full outward death could not conquer this Life of Sin. As Christ told the *Jews*, if they did not believe on Him, as the Resurrection of another life, they should die in their sins: So the mortal death cannot quit from that Second Death, which follows that corrupt birth-seed, which was not in this life demolished.

[2F 13:12] But then from here this doubt will arise: *Who is it that has left this testimony behind them, of all past generations, that before the Mortal Death did overtake them, they had first cleared themselves of that vile and corruptible Birth of Sin? Sure,* said the objective spirit, *if this be strictly examined, how few or scarce any will be found, but did mortally die before the inward Body of Sin was totally expired. If so, how then could they immediately pass, to where nothing that ever was of the polluted nature of sin could come in*? As to this obscure and deep query, of which I myself with others have been universally ignorant, as not finding out the several reservatories that spirits pass into: the letter of the Scripture not opening so positively what relates hereunto, as plainly to determine this doubtful matter; but it has been kept dark, in the foresight of the Most Holy Wise God. He has left Himself free, to give the Key of the Knowledge hereof in what age, and to such in that age, as shall be worthy of such Secret.

[2F 13:13] My spirit has been often solicitous with the Lord for this thing, as in case my body might break from my superior Spirit, and the mortal part die before the evil essences, which are called sin, be extinguished, as to their very originality, *Then into what Orb shall such a spirit enter, that may be almost but yet not quite got free from every relic of sin?* The Key of this unknown door was hereupon put into the hand of my Guardian Spirit, the Mystery hereof to unlock, that this Great Secret might be revealed, and that hereby the Elect might be undeceived; Who have believed nothing less, that though they should not come to see and feel sin finished, through *Everlasting Righteousness* coming in as a Conqueror: yet when loosed from this temporary life, they should straightway ascend into that Principal City of the Great King—which was once my belief, according to that traditional manuduction that I was under. But since, of mere great and Unparalleled Love, another deep is discovered, from out of which a sure and pure Word of Revelation has sprung both as to this and other obscure things.

[2F 13:14] And that the opening of this truth might not go forth only in the authority of a private revelation, when indeed there is need enough, for all Spirits to be tried, that do take this covering. For this cause a Scripture foundation was given to confirm and ratify what was so freely inspired into the mind: As first that Word was given to me to consider of, as in John 14:2, *In my Father's House are many mansions; if it were not so, I would have told you, I go to prepare a place for you, and when I have done that, I will come and receive you to myself.* From which words, it was given me thus to understand, that by house the Spirit signifies the locality of God's Invisible Kingdom, that has various Regions, for dwelling places, as it is said, there are *many mansions,* in which are degrees of glory. *Solomon,* in the mirror of Wisdom, had an account thereof, when he had built that magnificent house and Temple for the Most High. Which made him as in a Spiritual ecstasy cry out, *the Heavens of Heavens cannot contain you.* So it is said of our Lord Jesus, that He ascended up *above all Heavens.*

[2F 13:15] By all which we may conclude, that there are Degrees of Heavens, and yet all within the Celestial Sphere. For *Adam,* before he had awakened the sinful essence, was an inhabitant in one of the Heavens, which had the title of *a Paradise,* because of its serene and fruitful soil. But yet God's local habitation was not here, but He sent forth His Influencing Mist; and here frequently communed with *Adam* and *Eve* while they were undefiled. But they being once found in the depravation of this purity, this Heaven could not bear their corruptible image; for the Worm of Mortality could not here live. Upon which God said, Let them out of those mansions that are near to me: let them be driven out for the present.

[2F 13:16] Therefore let this suffice from the Scriptures themselves: not to mention those particular ideas and manifestations, that to some it has been given to see these Several Heavens; which upon others cannot be imposed for to believe, who yet have not those Anointed Eyes given to see withal. But surely there are some standing in the figure of the body, whose spirits have roved to and fro to see these Several Mansions, with spirits of all sizes and degrees, who are for this designed; only excluding those who are for the Dragon's Kingdom; who pass away in a reprobate sense out of the body. Those Left-hand Goats have no portion within these Eternal Gates: a deep Gulf is fixed. It is only of the Sheep and Lambs that I am to treat, who have found out this new, and only life path-way. Who though they are not come to the top-stone of perfection, before they see the dissolution of the body; yet having attained to a good degree, they may come unto the very next Throne Region: and there awhile stay, till they have drawn, and assumed a heavenly clarity, that is such an Essential

Body, against which no exceptions, by the highest Courts of Dignities can be objected. These now are the highest degrees of those, who before perfection be wrought, do cease out of the mortal body.

[2F 13:17] Then again there are of a lower degree of growth. *Now what reservatory is there for them, who may be but young in the New Birth?* As to this, it was clearly imparted unto my intellect, that such did enter into a more Inferior Mansion than Paradise, for that was too pure and serene for such. Therefore a lower degree is prepared for them, till they attain to an increase of the Divine Nature. They want not here their true Pastoral Teachers: for the Spirit of Christ is everywhere with His own. Therefore it was said that He went and preached to the spirits in prison that were disobedient in *Noah*'s days. For should all the old world have been cut off at once, and sealed under a final condemnation, the attributes of God's love, mercy, goodness, truth, and long-suffering would have been obliterated: Therefore He must have yet had respect unto such *after* the dissolution of their bodies; as had a sense in them awakened, for compunction and sorrow for what evils they had committed *in* their bodies.

### Spirit's in Prison

[2F 13:18] To confirm this, that we might not be altogether out of hope for such as may die in the first Beginnings of Regeneration, it is given me to declare that if these pass out of the body, such cannot go indeed immediately to God. For such will find it otherwise: they must wait till they have got somewhat more than what they went out withal in this world; and then shall they be admitted to see God. Surely there is a provision made for a Perfect Salvation in another principle besides this. For which we have that word in 1Pet. 3:19, *By which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison.* Also these words seem to speak fully to this, 1Pet. 4:6, *For this cause was the Gospel preached to them which were dead:* which generally is applied to such as are living, and yet dead in sins. But by the foregoing verse, it concerns the first position, *verse* 5, who said, the Apostle speaking of Christ, is ready *to judge the quick and the dead;* so that it implies there is a ministry belonging to the *dead,* that are not here made perfect. Much more might be enlarged upon some particular sights and manifestations that have hereof been given to some in the Spirit.

[2F 13:19] From here arises this objection, *If this be a truth, why was it not positively declared, and clearly revealed, as a foundational doctrine?* To which it may be answered, that the infinite Wisdom judged it meet to conceal this Mystery, because none might take advantage to turn the grace of God into wantonness: and thereby to neglect the present opportunity for working out their own salvation in this present time; which would make for a far and more exceeding weight of glory. Therefore it was left for the Worthy, to have this Secret made known to them by the Spirit of Revelation, who God foreknew would not take liberty to continue in sin; that this Grace after death might be made manifest towards such as did stand in need hereof. But now to great, holy, and aspiring spirits, these Lower Mansions in their Father's House are too mean: who cannot be satisfied to be so many degrees remote any time after death, from their God, and Lord Jesus, since liberty is proclaimed to work through all while we are in this terrestrial body. For there will be more joy and acclamations in heaven, for one such as shall finish their work here, so as to make a full conquest, then for millions of souls, that in the Invisible Regions must perfect what was lacking to complete them here.

[2F 13:20] Oh, said the Spirit, it will be well worth your labor and great travail, to break open this deep gate, and so to put on Christ your Lord, as in His all-powerful body, that you may make hereof but one ascending flight. This was the Mark that was after Christ's ascending so eagerly aimed at, and by some in that age reached to. For Christ could not lose the effect of His prayer, in that He did make His request, that those whom the Father had given Him, might be with Him where He was, that so they might see, and possess the same glory; which could not be, till they had gotten the victory.

For to none else is the admission given into His Kingdom, according to that in the Revelations: *To him that overcomes, will I grant,* said Jesus, *to sit with Me in My Throne.*

### The Transfiguration

[2F 13:21] But this may be objected further: *Those who had the Holy Ghost poured down in such an eminent manner had their way made very easy; Who was as their Fiery Chariot, that cut their work short. And if any now in this age had such a high endued power, it might soon give them a Translation out of all mortal impediments.* As to answer this: The Holy Ghost in that day was given after a Visible Manner, as a Sealing Character, displaying and acting forth Himself in Gifts, and Power, and Miracles. But now the same Spirit works in its beginning after another manner. Where it falls, it does all its mighty works *within* before it will show forth His Power *without.* For if the Apostles had not been purified by the Holy Ghost, and inwardly sprinkled with the Water of Life for soul cleansing, they could not have rejoiced in that assured hope of entering into the joy of their Lord and Master.

### The Spirit of Burning

[2F 13:22] Then was it plainly opened to me by the Spirit, that the Holy Ghost would not now in this Latter Age act out His mighty deeds by anyone, till their hearts were perfectly purified by faith: That Scripture being repeated to me, *Who after believing, were sealed with Holy Spirit of Promise.* Though in that day, soon upon Christ's ascending, the Spirit of working power was suddenly showered down upon some, as in the Acts mention is made, who had no foregoing work of Sanctification upon them. Upon which it made the Apostles themselves astonished, that the Holy Ghost should be sent down upon the Gentiles also, who did not believe in the Lord Jesus. But that is now ceased. The giving forth of the Holy Ghost in this day, will first produce inward effects, and be a Spirit of Burning, seasoning the vessels within, and inflaming it with the pure Fire of Love and Joy: And then being all divinely Leavened, there will be found all sufficiency to do the most wonderful things; easily flowing forth from the substantial body: which by degrees may work itself fixedly, through the humane form, in great splendor and glory.

[2F 13:23] So from this we are taught how the Holy Ghost has His first inspiring work upon us: to make all clean, pure and perfect within our minds and wills. For we shall be Witnesses of what He does first *in* and *for* us, before He will show forth *by* us the Seal of His great power, to what lies without us: who by signal working powers and gifts, are to be convinced and brought over to the faith, which will work by that Love, that will be shed abroad by the Holy Ghost. Whose first enkindlings and stirrings, said the Holy and True, You are to cherish and wait upon; till you are leavened throughout with righteousness, light, love and joy: which will make way for the going out of Wisdom's Power, and God's all sufficiency in a more marvelous manner than ever. Blessed highly are they whose lot shall be to come up to the Mount of God's habitation, through all these degrees. This Word take along with you; for certainty that it is possible for the close, wise, persevering, diligent spirits to see this Great and Mighty Salvation in the Lord Christ's Kingdom, in and through the Ghostly Power working mightily.

# Chapter 14

## APRIL 28, 1677
## THE VISION OF CHRIST

[2F 14:1] §.This morning, awaking about three o'clock, my Spirit, after some divine ejaculations, was enkindled through the Love-Melting Powers of the Spirit of my Lord Jesus: which did pass as a Burning Lamp through all my intellectuals, finding there matter to feed upon, answerable to its own light property, whereby refreshing was found. After this I slept till five o'clock, or somewhat more, as by me surmised. Then I was awakened with the beholding one in the Figure of a Man, in a Blue Clear Firmament, enclosed as in an oval frame, rainbow-like: His countenance was grave and majestic, facing me with great majesty. Upon the sight of whom, I did feel within me a mighty Rapture of joy. So I making to get nearer to this Person, thus plainly portrayed, then He did further withdraw; for such was the fervor of my Spirit that I would have proceeded into the very circle where He was. Who seemed to be in the very fashion of a Man from the loins upward, but I saw no legs or feet; but He fixed His light countenance still on me, which was no way terrible, but all reviving.

[2F 14:2] Now I was expecting somewhat to be spoken from Him, but the Voice was uttered within me, saying, This is the Sign of your Lord from Heaven, that Jesus whom you have desired to see. Upon which words, I attempted again to break through to Him, upon which this representation passed away, that I could no longer gratify my Spiritual Eye with this Blessed Personality. After His departure I was left sad, for I would willingly have left my corporeal form to have entered into that Oval Cloud, where I might have joined the Hand of my Spirit with His. But then it was again further revealed to me that if this sight was so pleasing and grateful, what would the coming in of the Father's Glory be, which would be much more than what I now did see. Then this Word spoke in me, Go on to believe, and you who look for Me shall yet further see greater things than all this.

[2F 14:3] §.Some days after this Vision, it was further manifested to me that this visible figure of my Lord Jesus signified the formation of Himself in our corporeity, which would be much more advantageous than in beholding Him in a distinct personality as without us, till we can come to say, *As He is, so are we.* Till which there can be no fixed view, for a constant retaining of His now glorified person in our eye. Now it was given me to understand, that the reason I could not be admitted to enter into that Oval Light where He was presented, was because, said the Spirit, You are not come to the same Perfect State and Degree in which you did see Him; wanting yet your more high, clear and Elementary Body; so that you could not possibly make your pass unto Him. But only hereby, your Jesus knows, that these transient sights would have a Pure Magical Power upon you, for the Begetting of the same likeness within you that was shown outward. For it was revealed to me, that all representations that did not work to this effect, would be little available, as to the fruition of the blessed object itself.

[2F 14:4] Then I was cautioned to be heedful in this respect, and to watch how to receive all powerful impressions hereby: all which was for the bringing on the Heavenly Birth, to every degree of perfection. Then it shall be no strange or unusual thing to see the very express Glory of the Majesty; when you are Christed, and all clothed upon with Him. Then shall you see that in yourselves, which

to others is invisible. *Philip* could not see the Father in Christ, while he was looking outwardly for some wonderful appearance of God in visible glory. He did not consider how incapable he was of that sight. But Jesus invites Him to see and know the Father in the pure simplified humanity. God will to all first manifest Himself here, in that which can assume the Christ-like life: which is the only light and medium, in which we can see God. Christ would have directed *Philip* to have looked for this Vision of God in himself; but He knew he was not clarified in his mind and spirit for that species: his eyes were not anointed, the Holy Ghost not being yet given to him. Therefore Christ directed him to turn his eye inward, to see the influence of the divine power and presence of the Father in and by Christ, who gave him this rebuke: Have I been so long with you, and yet have you not seen the power of the Deity acted forth in Me?

### Baptism by the Holy Ghost

[2F 14:5] The disciples were but of dull sight and slow of belief; so that it was not the conversation of Christ, although all holy, perfect and good, in His visible figure, that did give the transformation. Till He conveyed His Spiritual body into them, they could not rightly know Him, nor yet the Father in Him. Then the Spirit echoed this through me, O haste, and seek to be baptized by the Holy Ghost, that you may both know and be perfect in the Father and in the Son. Then may you see God in Christ apparently: God in God, sometimes in an immaculate nature, and sometimes in the essence of a Spirit, out of nature. From this learn to see yourselves all fully in Christ, as Anointed by the Holy Spirit into Him; and then you will not make complaint for want of the visibility of His Glorified Person: when you shall see yourselves in Him, and know Him in yourselves, as the Express Image of the Invisible God. Then you cannot but walk in the constant sight of that, which is all beautiful, comely, sweet, and ravishing. For then you will never care to turn your eyes, nor set your foot out of this Pleasant Habitation, when the Holy Ghost shall be ever in you, the Tabernacle of God.

## MAY 1, 1677
## THE ORIGINAL LANGUAGE

[2F 14:6] §.This morning it was much impressed upon me, that though all watchfulness and pure conversation are the product of a Spiritual Birth, yet there must be something besides willed by Him, who is said to have received Gifts to dispose of, as a purchased possession for us. He is ascended to the Fountain Head, where all diversity of Gifts are commandable: that may be of great profit and use to His Mystical Body; which thereby may come to the Perfect Unity. For it was given me to consider, that our Lord Jesus, though born into the humanity all immaculate, yet was afterward signally anointed with the Holy Ghost, before He went upon His ministerial function, which gave Him Power to effect those great things in the world. So that though He was born of the Holy Ghost, yet there was a further Sealing Power contributed by the Father. For when the Jews were offended that He made Himself equal with God, He confirms it by this evidence: that the Father had showed Him all things that Himself could do: from which sight as a Peculiar Gift, He did work such works as did bear witness of the supreme power of the God-head.

### Two Angelical Persons

[2F 14:7] While my intellectual mind was exercised upon this subject, and withdrawing from my outward animal sense, I did see in a paper figured out the forms of Two Angelical Persons folding up a veil or covering, which had been spread upon a writing, that was given me to read. Which was plain and legible, but I could not understand the Language; it was said to be Seraphic. This writing which was so fair was turned into a blank, and then again appeared as in a manuscript, which I was very so-

licitous to have read. But it was revealed to me immediately, that this was a high and peculiar Gift that belonged only to that which was Born out of the Lily Root. Which must be brought up, where it must hear this Language spoken frequently; till which no knowledge there is in the Divine Magia. For Spirits who had these deep wonders to show, could not make any intelligent hereof, till they had learned this Seraphic Language both to hear and speak withal, and so I was left in the demur hereof.

### The Seraphic Tongue

[2F 14:8] Only this writing I saw taken by the hand of a person, to whom I said, Give it me, for it belongs not to you: Which I presently gave to the view of another that was present: but neither of them could find out the Language of the Writing. By which my Spirit did conclude that we must proceed to a further learning, for to know what is in the heights and depths, wherein all lawful and allowable secrets are couched, to be understood. Had not *Moses* been taken up to God forty days, and in that holy separated mount, been all new organized, he could never have understood God's Speech unto him; so as to comprehend, and know how to make an interpretation, and how to bring it down unto the people; by translating it out of the Seraphic Tongue, into the formal speech of terrestrial organical creatures. So from this it was given me further to see, that there was a New Ministration, which I had not looked into, that was of great expediency.

## MAY 2, 1677
## MORE ON THE ORIGINAL LANGUAGE*

[2F 14:9] §.This next day, being the second of *May,* waiting upon the further opening of this vision, and making my application for our enrichment, with this Heavenly Gift, it appearing to be of great use and consequence: I presently found myself environed with a Body of Light, with a noise as of Rushing Waters, which were called the Seraphic Sounds; for I felt a mighty sweet influence from them. Finding my spirit sinking deeper into this Heavenly Center; from out of which arose Gusts of Air and Flames of Celestial Fire, with Springs of Water, as a fountain of joy, and Dust of Gold all sparkling, and herewith mingling; and this was a wonderful presentation. All which I did as sensibly feel to strengthen, to quicken, and enliven the inward; as I often naturally felt the influences of the outward elements upon the outward body, to cause dullness, pain, grief, and sorrow.

### The Fair Lily

[2F 14:10] And further, there was a Voice that distinctly echoed in me, that all these influencing powers from the Heavenly Body, did come down to enrich, and make fat the soil and magical ground, in which the Unction Birth was rooted. For this pure and Ethereal Body (which has commixed itself into such a high essentiality) is designed to feed, revive, strengthen, and rejoice, what is of its own elementary body. Therefore it is meet for such, in whom this New Birth is raised, that they do often bring and lay it where the warm beamings of our sun may overshadow it: that is, that the quint-essential power of all things may send forth its strong Spiritual influences upon it; so hereby it may grow mighty and strong, to relieve the depressed life from the grosser element, which has enkindled whatever is of torment, trouble, and strife. Therefore cried the Spirit, whatever you do, let this be chiefly minded. For your liberty and redeeming power lies in this Fair Lily, springing from the feeding life of this bright elementary body: which your Lord said, He gave for the life of the world; for hereby it can only be renewed again.

## MAY 3, 1677
## MORE ON THE ORIGINAL LANGUAGE*

[2F 14:11] §.This morning, being the third of *May,* something more did open to me of the Vision. That whereas I saw a Veil folded up by the Two who were in long garments, girt about with girdles, which I omitted before to mention: who were figured out to be Angelical Messengers, sent to draw away, and to wind up the covering, that had overspread the writing. By this it was signified that there was one remove made, in order to the understanding and knowing what was further therefrom to be revealed. For already there was much of the Veil removed, which hid the meaning of the Spirit in that Visible Writing: which alluded also to the Scriptures, but was now upon the removing, that so the true intent of the Spirit might come to be known. And further it was moved in me, why I could not read when the Veil was removed, seeing I had found that favor as to have that covert taken off, that had darkened, and hid the Heavenly Mystery from the understanding? Why might it not be given me to know also, what was in that inscription?

[2F 14:12] §.*Answer,* to this it was whispered by a soft voice, That there was something in that, which was yet to be kept secret; it contained that, whereof the Scripture had made no mention, and therefore it was presented to me in an Unknown Tongue and Language, which should be learned in its time, and understood, being reserved for its proper season. For as there was a New Song that none could learn, but such as were Perfectly Redeemed from the Earth; so verily there is an *Everlasting Gospel* that none shall understand the language of, but such as are made again all new, from this pure extracted matter; which will be all spiritually organized: from which they shall be apt then to hear and learn what is yet concealed by the Deity, for a future day of manifestation. This is only your present business and work, to gather in more Golden Soil to enrich your land, that your Lily-Birth may arrive to a spotless perfection. Then with clear eyes you shall see what is written within the Table-mind of the Spirit; for this is the day when there shall be no need of *teaching one another*. Wisdom's-Birth carries that Lamp, which never goes out.

[2F 14:13] All of her Births will have the light element evermore encompassing them; so that whatever may come forth in proverbs or dark-sayings, the Spirit of Wisdom and Revelation is at hand to interpret. None of her Offspring shall be brought up illiterate, but shall be taught in their own Mother-tongue, who shall come to be a people of a Pure Language and Seraphic Speech. Therefore said the Spirit, consider of all those things that may make you acceptable and meet here for it. For it is the Fathers pleasure, that in this very principle, this great change should be wrought in reference to this Immortalized State: Upon this Birth then will be hung all those Sparkling Stones and Beautifying Gifts that will be the true Royal Stamp upon you. But take this caution: Be sure to carry a deaf ear to all that will solicit you from here. Remembering, while you live in this Airy Region, the Prince thereof will readily mingle his corrupt elementary matter with your will spirit; then all is in danger to be turned into a blank, as in Vision you did see. Therefore watch, and keep to that which will keep your Lily-birth from here.

# Chapter 15

## MAY 7, 1677
## NOT FAR FROM THE KINGDOM OF GOD*

[2F 15:1] §.Being met together in the power of the Lord, to Breathe out to each other what was opened from this Life-spring; just upon the concluding part thereof, I saw in vision a Covering passing before me. The ground was scarlet, all set or wrought with studs of sparkling gold, with this Word going along with it: Of such like as this will be the furniture of that place, where the Most Holy will dwell. Then in prayer I had a sudden aspect of a countenance, who looked all pleasant; and this Word came with it, and said, *Jesus looked upon them, and said, you are not far from the Kingdom of God.*

## MAY 8, 1677
## THE WHOLE SALE
## (WISDOM'S MERCHANDIZE)

[2F 15:2] §.This morning a shivering, influencing power and presence was witnessed about my heart. After which this salutation I had, in the known speech of that which so girded about the intellectual mind, uttering these words: Will you make a full dispose of your spirit, soul, and body unto your Lord, who is willing to assume all to Himself, that He might make it His proper workhouse? But consider well, and be not rash in this thing: for if you contract to make all over unto Me your True Immanuel, then nothing is to be parceled out from Him, who is come to be a Purchaser for the whole; that none may come in for any part besides Me. For I have a sufficiency of stock to set all a work. In this your Jesus will be properly all, who well knows upon what account, He demands to have all turned over to Him, to act, work, and do wholly after the pleasure of His own Spirit. For while the Exterior Will and the Rational Mind, with all their train of senses, do but in part bear rule, and here up and down float; (though giving their vote according to the moral and sober part of things) all those must give place to Another Birth, that will excel all this righteousness.

[2F 15:3] Now you that are come to that Degree of Knowledge, as to discern the Right-hand Gate from the Left: who have been sometimes under the discipline of the Spirit, as also sometimes under the Gifts and Powers from the Celestial Orb: to you then, who have thus tasted that the Lord is gracious, can you give up all propriety in yourselves, to be in very deed no longer your own; being come to that grown age, as to make a true sale of yourselves to such a Purchaser, as is come to buy without money, or price, or anything of this world's merchandise? You are now known to Him, and He to you, who now proffers to give His own life for yours. Oh, who would not strike up such a bargain as this, that so for you to live, it may be Christ: Who will at another rate manage your very Corporeal State, and upon much better advantages, than you have done, while you live under this Starry Region's influences, which is the light and might of the Man of Sense and Reason, whose Sun must so go down, and never more to rise. When this Day-Star appears in you, all the exterior lights will go out.

## MAY 9, 1677
## THE TRIAL OF LOVE

[2F 15:4] §.This day my spirit was cast into a very serious and deep debate about that proposal, which was the other morning so audibly made by the Spirit of our Lord Jesus unto us. Whose faces hereunto were set, and our minds hereunto inclined. I had another onset, by the friend of Him who most willing is to become our Bridegroom. Who still urged this thing mightily, concerning the actual passing away of ourselves, so as to be entirely the Lord's, moving it again in this Word: Who, who can come as a very Christ to be, who stands in human property, but those who have bequeathed themselves away, as to move from another life, in which they may go forth in winged power. I found my Spirit as in *Peter*'s frame, when our Lord repeated the question so often, and so suspiciously concerning his loving of Him, even so verily. I found my heart troubled, and my spirit grieved, that my Lord, by His Spirit, press this thing so hard upon me, as if my Love and Will were hereunto doubted of by this my Lord; from whom I knowingly would reserve nothing that could be demanded from me. Whose Love-fervor has been so strong, as to give away my whole spirit to Him, who, I do believe, will renew Another more Pure and Powerful Spirit in us.

### The Seal of Truth

[2F 15:5] Then was this by the Spirit further spoken in me: True it is, that you love the Lord your God with your whole soul and spirit, which is more than all Burnt-Offerings or Worship, though Spiritually-instituted. Yet this is not enough. For Love, as it may work in an Ardent Spirit, by and through Internal Flowings to the object, may stop again. This many have reached unto, and yet have doubted in it again. Therefore God would have a pledge left in His hand: Something given Him as a Fruit of Love, to wit, Life itself must Seal the Truth hereof, as going along with it. Christ was put upon giving this Proof to his Father, not only in Bare Love, but by laying down of His life, for which said He, I am beloved of my Father (*John* 10). So, as God had this proof from Him, so He expects the same from you: who if you love the Father and Him, then His commands will not be to you grievous.

### The Law of Love

[2F 15:6] You will then observe all the antecedents belonging to this Law of Love. Which Love rightly Born carries a mighty force with it. It cannot deny or keep anything back from that which it is Centered in: as has been evidenced by those Great Saints, before Christ's manifestation and since: As *Abraham*, who did unfeignedly love God, when he forsook his own people, and land of his nativity, to go where the Lord gave him a Word of Command to go. Yet this was not sufficient, but you did see God would prove him further, as in *Isaac*'s death. When God saw that he stopped not in that which touched the very life, then said the Lord: Because you have done this thing, in blessing I will bless you. I am now sure you love and fear me, and therefore God will be your Exceeding Great Reward; which the Patriarch did fully witness in his day. Numerous instances might be added out of the Scriptures, as also the late and private experiences of holy souls; that have been obedient to that True Prophet and Seer, who daily giveth, and makes known the Counsel of God. Under which Seal opening, you are come; to which Spirit of Wisdom, give now an obedient ear, said the Holy and True.

[2F 15:7] Upon this I made my application in great earnestness, according to that Power and Life that stirred in me; being greatly distressed to know what was further to be given up and parted withal, that consisted in the power of our own Wills; having gone far in the self-abnegation, suppressing and keeping under the Earthly Part, that so sin could not reign, but be kept under condemnation: so as to this Degree some are come. As I was thus silently in the Spirit of my Mind parleying, this Word was

uttered to me: All this is acceptable, but the very giving up of the life must be, that My Name may be written in the very Blood thereof, and be returned in a Life-Quickening Spirit again. Then will the property of that which was dull, dark, and corrupt become all light, vigorous, pure, and crystalline, as the Spirit of Christ was in the Corporeal Figure. The same mind, which only respects things that are above in the Father's Kingdom of Glory is to be in you, as it was in Jesus your Lord.

### Finishing the Mystery

[2F 15:8] For this is the sum and head to which all Prophecies and Revelations tend, even the finishing of this Mystery, Christ the Light, Wisdom, Power, and Righteousness of God: which can be brought to pass only by giving up, and laying down our life, as to all Sensitive Properties; which is the highest and most resolute act of the will-spirit, to give its name up thus, and to subscribe your spirit, soul, and body in the Blood of that Life, that must die, that so Christ may be only alive in you. And albeit while you are laying down with great reluctancy that life, which is so agreeable to this terrestrial life; because of contempt and dishonor, that it suffers hereby: as your Lord in His crucifixion went through so by your spiritual Mystical giving up your lives, though as to this world's eye in shame, rebuke, and weakness; yet in truth and verity, it shall rise in strength, victory, and power in Ghostly Majesty, whereby you will possess the Gates of your enemies. This is most wonderfully deep, if it may be fathomed by the Spirit in you.

## May 11, 1677
## The Unmixed Ministration

[2F 15:9] §.My Spirit entered into a deep sense, upon some occasion that was administered, how apt it was for such who had taken upon them part of the Ministry to engross and confine it to Persons, and Sexes: and to bring down the Superior Spirit and Light under the Inferior Government of the Low and Mean Spirit, that respects man, and savors that glory, which is after the flesh. For Christ told the Jews they loved the praise of men more than that of God, in that they sought honor from one another, as the great and learned Rabbis, who in their high learning, despised an illiterate Christ (as they called Him). From this I observed that the Leaven of such a spirit might be ready to mingle with some in this Present Age, though Partly Illuminated, in and through the Knowledge of the Mystery of God in Christ:

### The Breath of Power

[2F 15:10] As I was pondering and considering these things in my mind, and making request that nothing of the exterior might have wherein to glory; but that God would appear in such, who were as little and nothing in their own account: and that all flesh might be silent, that Spirit might only go forth in its own power and clearness. Upon this, I had a full Gust come in upon me, with this Word speaking in me: There is a Gospel that nothing of man shall mingle with; that shall only be entrusted with such Child-like Spirits: For which nothing of the creature's testimony will be needed; for it will be the Breath of an Irresistible Power, of which none shall be ashamed.

### An Open Door

[2F 15:11] Then was that Scripture the next morning spoken to me: *Be not slothful, but followers of them, who through Faith and Patience, Inherited the Promises.* This Word was taken up by the Spirit, and spoken Audibly unto us, upon the account of that, which opened before in way of Prophecy, as to that Unmixed Ministration that should arise in some qualified for it. Of which much was revealed in the discoursive way of the Spirit: That there was now given to all an Open Door, that would

look hereinto, from that in *Heb.* 6:11, where *Paul* directs this Word in general to the whole body, consisting of men and women: *And we desire that every one of you do show the same diligence, to the full assurance of hope to the end.* Here is none left out, but both sexes implied; whose work and labor of Love in ministering to their fellow saints, according as they had Tasted, and Received of the Heavenly Gift, God was *not unrighteous to forget.*

### The Blessed Hope

[2F 15:12] Therefore he incited them to go forward, not excluding the Female, but laying it as a weight upon both Male and Female, as all One in the Spirit, to show *the same diligence,* till they could get through the Veil: where they might come to the Lively Oracle; leaving the lower principles and administrations, as to the very knowledge of Christ in His First Appearance. Who has left the whole Creation still groaning, and waiting to be delivered from the present mixed and Imperfect State. Such I mean in this creation as are here foreordained to a more High Grown State, as to be minding and waiting for that Blessed Hope, and more wonderful and glorious Appearance of Christ, no more to leave us in the weakness of sin and corruptibleness. This has had its Long Day in the world, its sun is upon setting: and then but one short interposing Night will be, before the Everlasting Gospel-day shall break forth; whose Breath is at once all Redeeming Power.

### A More Perfect Ministry

[2F 15:13] So it was further shown me that there should not be another Christ revealed, but the same that was, in a more High and Transparent manner. As the Mighty God and Savior, He is to complete the work of Salvation, through a more perfect ministry, that shall be committed to Elected Angels: that shall be sent forth in such a Gospel-Seal, as none shall be able to counterfeit. For this Word as a Secret, was given me to hear: That the Gospel, that in these Last Ages, since Christ was preached to the nations of the world, was not of that force and might as to overthrow the Seal of the Beast, and thereby to recover man out of his deep relapse. For though somewhat of this All-powerful Gospel did for a little moment after Christ's ascension break through with the Holy Ghost, as some Firstfruits thereof, yet it soon retired and shut up again.

### The Everlasting Gospel

[2F 15:14] But the Spirit said expressly, Be of good cheer, whom God greatly loves: and know this Gloomy Day is far spent; there is but a short night before the Everlasting Gospel shall break out. Then be Watchers till this morning dawns. Put on your armor; and be not as others, who are slothful, not believing to such a Gospel-day. But pray that you may be entrusted with the first openings of this Gospel-breath; which will devour and lay waste the kingdom of the Dragon and the Beast; that so in the power and splendor of a Glorified Christ, you may come to reign on and over the earth. This Everlasting Gospel will soon gather in its own Heavenly Train: but in hope, diligence, and patience do you remain for it.

# Chapter 16

## MAY 13, 1677
## THE GLASSY BOOK

[2F 16:1] §.In the night, when the outward senses were reposed, I saw at a distance a reserved or separated place, which was as light as the firmament, and there I saw the Figure of a Book. It had no clasps or seals upon it, neither was there anything therein written that I could perceive; but the Leaves appeared all as Transparent as the Flaming Light. After this came forth out of that Bright Orb a Flock, all in White Robes in a triumphant posture, rejoicing about me with pleasant bright countenances, and would have me repose myself in the same alacrity with them. But I was more sad and ponderous, and could not move with that agility which they did with their Airy Bodies. But I soon felt a Mighty Influence from their bodies; though at their first appearance I was as one surprised. But such was their great affability and friendliness towards me, that in a little while I was in their liberty and joy. Which no sooner I was made sensible of, but they told me they must withdraw unto their own place. I then desired they would not leave me, but let me go along with them, which they could not permit at this Season; which brought heaviness upon me again.

## MAY 15, 1677
## ALL FLESH SHALL SEE THE GLORY OF THE LORD*

[2F 16:2] §.Being together met, for the mutual enkindling of the life and power in each other, while the Doctor was breathing out what was given him from the Spirit: this voice uttered itself in that time, *All flesh shall see the Glory of the Lord:* several times it passed through me.

[2F 16:3] §.The next morning the Doctor being at prayer, I heard mighty internal sounds, and one distinct shout which was astonishing: which was so loud an acclamation, as I never had the like before.

## MAY 17, 1677
## THE GLORY OF THE LORD*

[2F 16:4] §.Then being in the morning in prayer together, the Word thus moved in me, saying, Let the Glory of the Lord return to His sanctuary.

## MAY 18, 1677
## A CLEAR AND PURE GOSPEL MINISTRY*

[2F 16:5] §.In the night, in my first sleep, I saw the Doctor in a place wide and spacious. It seemed to have no limitation either by walls or gates; and I being alone with him, suddenly a great throng of people did come in upon us. So then the Doctor said: This multitude will not be dismissed, till they receive somewhat of that which the Lord has made us stewards of. Then the Doctor preached that; which was of great force and power, so that they appeared to be very attentive thereto. Upon which I awaked; and the Word said that there should be a Clear and Pure Gospel Ministry, not by man, nor after man, but by and according to the Revelation of Jesus Christ.

## MAY 19, 1677
## MYSTERY OF THE GLASSY BOOK OPENED*

[2F 16:6] §.This morning the Mystery of the Glassy Book, which was revealed to me by way of vision on the 13th of this month, was opened very conspicuously. For as I was walking in the solitude of my spirit, this stirred again in my mind, being presented with this Scripture: *We all as with open face, beholding as in a Glass the Glory of the Lord are changed into the same.* By this it was manifested to me, that this Book represented the Spirit of the Lord Jesus, which was the Mirror, by which we only could see the Father's Glory. And further in that this Book was different from all other books, because there was nothing therein written; which was more marvelous, and gave me occasion to query with my Lord about it: What this Book was, which had no Seals upon it, nor any Engraving in it? Then was it thus resolved me, That it was that which would put an end to all other books: it was beyond all Literal Ministrations: They would not be needed when this Crystal Glass was revealed. This would be the sum and substance of all Time's Finishing Mystery; according to that mentioned in the *Revelation*, of the Book which was open in the Angel's Hand, which *John* saw, when the Seven Thunders uttered their voices, and he was ready to write; but till the Dispensation of the Fullness of Time, there was a prohibition.

[2F 16:7] The *Glass* that comprises all Wisdom, Knowledge, and Sight of Eternal Things, being given forth or held out for such, who really prize the substance, which is the Living Word itself; and that above all Shadows, Sounds and Declarations. Christ is to arise to them higher, from a Sealed Book to an Open One, that is, from Letter to Spirit; giving Himself, not only as a Book to Read, but to Eat down. You shall taste this Crystal Book, and thereby come to be in the Express Clarity of it, all clear in Judgment and Knowledge. It will then be connatural to Prophecy and Reveal, whatever is seen in the Eternal Glass of all Wonders. Oh, not to hear only, but to live the Word of Truth: which is all sweet to that part, which retains the Divine and Pleasant Savor of God in His Transparency: but it is bitter indeed in the bowels or heart of the earth, it cannot be well digested there; the operations are so pure, that it will work out the Internal Gross Matter, that has brought the thick darkness over all; that so all of one entire clarified piece might be come in the nature of that Glassy Book. Which is an All-seeing Light, from that one Everlasting Day to see universally and infallibly?

### The Finishing Mystery

[2F 16:8] Then was it set much upon me to seek when and how, and upon whom this Finishing Mystery might be witnessed. For it seemed to me that this would not be a Dispensation till the *End of Time;* because the Angel who had the Book, compassing both Sea and Land, protested, *Time should be no longer,* till the Seventh Angel be ready to sound his Trumpet: which is not yet in any part of the creation effected. Therefore this Unsealed Book will be given to none, till the Seven Seals of the Written Book are first broken up. These are the conclusions that may be gathered from the Holy Writ. Therefore this Clear and Unsealed Book, as it alluded to that in the *Revelations*, may not be reached in our age.

### The Fiery Oven

[2F 16:9] So then: *To what end was this Vision of the Book opened and shown, if not for particular propriety; that we might hope not only to see this Crystalline Book, but to be the Glass itself?* Thus arguing upon or from my inferior light, I sensibly felt a more high and Superior Light in that very instant of time overshadowing me, saying, Will you of that sort also be? Do you see this Crystalline Day so far off, as to give up the last breath of your hopes; as if God had set the Bar of His decree

here against you, so as not to look for that Angel to stand upon your Earth and Sea with this Unsealed Book in his hand? *Answer:* Far be it from you to entertain such doubts; who have felt already the gathering together of this Glassy Sea, and commixture of it for a sublime Body of Glory; which beyond the age of all time shall be manifested. If you can but endure the Purgation of the Glassy Fire, which will make serene and pure: for it is of the same Flame and Enkindling Light of the Immense Deity; so as it is there a Bubbling Spring of Fire, which will strongly renew itself in you. Oh pray that you may come to walk this Fiery Oven; that then nothing impure may remain; but such like burnings may devour all creaturely things, which cannot be a subject matter for the Heavenly Power to work upon.

## MAY 20, 1677
## THE BURNING WHEELS

[2F 16:10] §.Then saw I in the idea of light, Two great Fiery Wheels, with two more less,[6] which moved by them that wrought incessantly: as a clockwork; having their spring-motions: and from there the Crystalline Substance began to appear. Of which transparency, that which is called Wisdom's Glass is made out. And none ever did, or can see, any part of the Celestial Beauty of Holiness, without this Wheel come to be formed in them: Which was declared to me to be the Creating Power and Energy of God, who produces those Little Wheels, to work, act, and move answerable to the Great Ones. Then it was spoken in me, Behold and see, in these Wheels the whole Foundation-work of the New Creation. For out of this will come that Spirit, who shall appear as a Flash of Lightning, that will burn through flesh and bones, rocks and stones, that will be all at liberty, resting only in Habitations of Purity. These Lesser Wheels care not to live out of the Great Wheels, as the Center of their Springing Life: which they will still turn into; for they must all connaturally work, act, and move together.

[2F 16:11] Then was it made out to me, that the Two Great Fiery Wheels were the Eternal Outflowing *Deity;* manifesting itself in the Working Wheel: which presents the Clarified Body of infinite *Wisdom,* which moves always in light and fire-celestial; all whose works are wrought through fire, because of clarity. Then was it further opened what the Two Other Wheels were in their property. The one was our own Eternal Spirit, as it is come back again to live abstracted out of gross matter and nature. The Fourth Wheel is the Crystalline Pure Corporeity, in which this Divine Life-flash will move itself conspicuously. So as now all Four will be incessantly in their working power, when Wisdom's Glassy Book shall be found in any one; which is as a New Organical Body, that has all radical powers and senses, as a rising morning without clouds; being as that Wheel, with Eyes fixed round about them.

## MAY 21, 1677
## THE BREATH OF THE SACRED FIRE*

[2F 16:12] §.Upon this Manifestation my spirit sunk down, as into a Central Flame, requesting to abide in that, until *Jehovah*'s Wheel had abstracted the grosser part from myself. Oh, what can us separate here-from, but the Fervent Burning of these Wheels? For the ideas thereof by these Mystical Similitudes are far from satisfying, without the very enkindling powers hereof be felt, that can only mount us from this earth. Then it was revealed to me further, that these Wheels had not in any of these late ages run in the pure Fire of Conjunction. For where all Four are found in any one person

6 SDV Note: Meaning two little or lesser wheels.

incorporating together, there Wonders will be wrought. For then Gospel ministers will go forth, as mighty Flames of Fire. Then I cried, Ah! My Lord, when, and in whom shall all these Wheels meet together? It was said by the Springing Word within me, that it would be accomplished in them that were Numbered in the *Glassy Book:* Which was not to be read, but tasted, and felt.

### The Counsel of the Spirit

[2F 16:13] Therefore this counsel of the Spirit was given, That whenever we did feel in ourselves any Breath of Sacred Fire rise, which opens from the Great Wheels, then our own spirits, that is a Spark also of Celestial Fire, should *abstract,* and presently herewith *mix;* and then possibly it may *fall* into the Deep Abyssal Center: Which will bring forth all these Working Wheels in their order, which will work high and powerful. If you steadily *join* all the force of your Superior Will, and in no part be divided, then will you *feel* these Wheels begin to be in their separating quality; burning up all that is not of the nature of the *Glassy Sea.* Then this rule I also received: That we should forbear to be drawers of Water from the Sea of this World; for that would quench, and damp this fire, and especially before it has got the dominion, and mastery: but then it is above all floods, nothing can drown it, when all powers celestial are united together. Another rule given was: That we should make daily application for Full Vials of Oil to be poured forth, that is much of the Sweet Sappy Flowings of the Spirit, as Rivers of Oil: which will make all these Flaming Wheels work up to a Seraphic Height; so as hereby to look terribly for glory and beauty for perfection.

## MAY 23, 1677
## THE CUP OF EUCHARIST

[2F 16:14] §.As we were met together at prayer, I had the presentation of a Golden Cup, out of which arose a Flame of Light, as fire bubbling beyond the brim of the Cup, and it was thus spoke, *Whoever are able, let them drink of it.* Upon which I considered hereof, expecting a further explanation of this Vision. Which this morning thus opened itself: That the Cup, which was all of Gold, presented Christ in His pure Corporeity, who had been tried through all fires, and thereby was made a meet vessel to retain the essential Spirit of the pure Flaming Deity; that springs high beyond the bounds of humanity, as the Fire did above the Cup. Then it was revealed, and uttered by a still voice, that as I did see the rising of this Fire, even so should be the Flowing of the Holy Ghost: For it was His Fiery Baptism, wherewith many should be sprinkled from its going out. Oh my Lord, why was this Cup tendered for those who were not able to drink down this Spirit of Fire? Would it might be our lot; who would surely rejoice to drink down a full draught hereof. Oh dear Jesus, that by yourself you would hand this Cup unto us, as you once did in the Figurative Way to your Disciples.

### The Golden Degree

[2F 16:15] After I had much after this manner enlarged myself in Spirit to my God and Father, the Word then spoke in me: You must first arrive to this Golden Degree. Then you shall be flowingly filled with this high Spirited Flame. Christ the Lord is here for our example: *Now then take good heed to those great Fiery Working Wheels, which will frame for you this Golden Vessel. Suffer gladly the mighty force of them, which will form this Golden Cup in each one, where the heavenly and pure elementary matter is prepared. Be only found in your diligency, and then your Great Work-Master will be under an engagement, to finish this Unknown Mystery:* That so you may be Golden Cups of blessings to yourself and others.

## MAY 26, 1677
## VISION OF THE OFFICER WITH A GOWN: MORE ON THE GOLDEN CUP*

[2F 16:16] §.In the night, being cast into a sleep, I saw this Golden Cup again, which was presented to my intellectual sight some days before, as I was in prayer. Now again, passing from one to another, some few of us being met together, the Person that handed this Cup to us was in the Garb of an Officer with a Gown. And when he came to give it to me, he seemed somewhat secretly to whisper, which the rest were not to hear: which I thought carefully to observe. But when I awaked, I could not remember anything of the Words, which I did believe was of concern. I only well-retained the Administrator of this Golden Cup, which did not flame out as it did before; but there was an Oily Liquor of Flame Color in it, which tasted like Pleasant Wine.

### The Interpretation

[2F 16:17] After I was come out of this Night Vision, I waited, what would be further spoken to me: which Interpretation was presently given. The Officer personated our Lord Jesus, to whom the Great Majesty had given the Power of Administration. For there is no true sacramental institution, but when He is present Himself; who knows those Sanctuary Vessels of His own Body, that are thereunto affixed, and who are separated from all common use. He walks amongst the Golden Cups, to convey Flaming Spirit and Pure Oil of Light. He does not put off with dead heartless signs, but lets in His Flowing Nature as Spikenard; that when any have drank hereof, they feel an Inebriating Spirit, that Burns as Fire upon the Altar of their Hearts: as a Signal Witness, that the Right Administrator has opened Himself in a Celestial Fire-Spring: Which is the Pool of the Holy Ghost, from which every Sanctuary Vessel is to be sprinkled. Take heed hereto.

# Chapter 17

## JUNE 1, 1677
## VISION UPON THE DOCTOR'S TAKING A HOUSE

[2F 17:1] §.This day I had a very deep sense opened in me, upon a Vision of Several Pits, that were filled with Muddy Water: so thick they were together, that myself with some other persons, could not know how to pass, without peril of falling into some one or other of them. But our way lying through this place, we could no way avoid, but must go through it; which was very hazardable, irksome and grievous. But through fear and heedfulness, watchfulness and prayer, we did get through. And I heard this Word speak, saying: This shall also turn to your Salvation through earnest prayer, from the supply of the Spirit of Jesus. Then again this night I saw, as two of us were going upon our way with great earnestness, to be at the end of our journey, there fell a Sudden Shower, and stopped us: so as we feared, lest the night should come upon us, before we should reach the place we were designed to. This Vision did plainly speak out: There was some present danger at hand; which made me desire to be apart, to know the Mind of the Spirit herein; bemoaning those vicissitudes, which might happen for our further Probation.

### Interpretation of the Muddy Pits

[2F 17:2] Then was it showed me, that those Pits which I saw, were promising advantages from the Earthly Region; Which stood open to plunge us into their Deep Abyss, as which would drown our Superior Life in their Muddy Waters. For this Word came to me while I was considering hereof: Escape here for your Life's sake, for what have you to do in the way of the *Assyrians?* Upon which I prayed earnestly, that we might be kept from the many evil occurrences that might happen upon the removal, to an outward habitation; which I foresaw might be hurtful for the present to our spirits. For which cause those things were presented. For how would the Prince of this Earth and Airy region triumph to see us, who have disdained his kingdom, and all its preferments, to be caught by any baits from it? For I heard this Word say in me, There would be a great acclamation from out of the Bottomless Pit, could they but bury your Fire-sparkling Life therein. Therefore fear always, while you have anything to transact where Satan has to do.

### Interpretation of the Shower

[2F 17:3] §.Then as to the Shower, that came while we were journeying on, it was opened to me, that as to the Working-Wheel of Fire, there might be some stop. For there was nothing more injurious than Floods of Water upon Fiery Wheels, that is, Heavenly Spirits involving themselves with Earthly Things: though good and lawful to others, yet not to us, who had the *Nazarite* Vow upon us; and under such Laws and Institutions, as were not made known to others. Therefore, that which might be justifiable in them, would not be to us, because under Great Light, Revelation and Direction. The Spirit in us bearing Witness hereunto, that is to be of great binding force, and powers, to keep us in all wariness.

### The Bare Ground of Faith

[2F 17:4] Then as I was writing hereof, this Word uttered: You of all others, said the Lord, have I desired for to keep separated for My use. Therefore take heed what you let in to My Temple Body. Oh, said the Just One, That I could but have such large credit from you, as I had from some in past-ages; that could lean and rest upon Me, without the Crutch of Reason under their arms. For alas! You are yet but as Children that are not able to stand alone. You dare not trust yourselves upon the Bare Ground of Faith, and that makes you fly so readily, to what is before your Sensible Eye. True, Oh soul, your Terrestrial Man has a near disposition to the production of this earthly climate, and runs thereunto upon all occasions, as to its nourishing and providing mother, knowing yet no better; having found all Sensible Sustainment thereby, according to the manner of this Fallen Creation. But know, you have a Mother of a Higher Degree, that is more True and Natural to your Spirits: and she would now you should come to understand, and know her to be the Everlasting Wisdom of the Mighty God, that can do much above nature and creature for you: who would have you desert all other, and hear and learn from her Mouth; from which drops the Law of Love and Kindness.

## JUNE 3, 1677
## THE TRANSMUTING FIRE

[2F 17:5] §.Upon this manifestation and counsel of the Spirit, I found all my internal powers strongly knit together, to find out this more sure and all-sufficient providence. For there was somewhat in me of Infinite Being, that was too great to be kept under the Tuition and Law of that which was Earthly and Terrestrial. From out of the bounds of which, my Spirit would break away, to live to obey that Law of faith: which as yet no Adeptist that I know has arrived to. Which has failed as to my own part, because so often have I given place to self-reasoning; being by a foster-mother so long brought up in that way, that death it is therefrom to withdraw. But I am taught not to favor my life herein, though daily solicited hereunto by thousands of spirits, who cry, Spare that delicate natural thing, which this world glories in. For indeed it has carried all in a forcible stream: but now, in Spirit I do see, this Great Volative will be dried up.

### Vision of the Muddy Sea

[2F 17:6] For this night I did see by way of Vision, a Muddy Sea boiling as a Pot; but under it to my great marvel, there was an Invisible Fire hidden under the mud and water. Which I did view; thinking at first sight, nothing less but that the Fire would there be choked: but it did get the victory. And in the morning, as I was hereof considering, it was opened to me, that this Muddy Sea was the Natural Rational Life that must be purged by fire; till it be all consumed in such, who like Worthy Champions shall come to show themselves, in the life of faith. I did also see a Clear Water separated from the Muddy Water: which by the fire was driven upward, as if it had been a spring. From this it was given me to understand, that there was a Pure Heavenly Matter, which when the Celestial Fire did work in any, it would separate from the Gross and Evil Quality. This Muddy Sea was said to be the Rolling Motions that work from the common Sense of earthly things, taken into the mind: which makes it foul and muddy. Now what can purge this but fire that lies in the deep beneath: which gradually works through it, by virtue of an Eternal Force, and Might, when once struck in, by the Sapphire Stone of the Deity. Then it enkindles every property, and becomes a Pure Fire Element, which suffers nothing combustible to mix with it. After this I did see, when the fire had got the mastery of this Puddled Sea, that it became all as a Bright Firmament, and there sprung up a Wonderful Tree.

## JUNE 4, 1677
## THE SAPPHIRE TREE

[2F 17:7] §.In Vision was shown me a Wonderful Tree, which was strange and amazing, being out of the course of nature of all, which formerly I had seen. The Body of it was of the Fire Element, and the Branches thereof were clustered with various Sparkling Stones of all manner of colors, which were of such a dazzling glory, that nothing less than the reflection of this Tree could give the capacity of sight. For as the day exceeds the night for light, so did these Stones for luster excel what are of the choicest of this creation. It no sooner appeared but it again disappeared: but it left its Light Rays upon my mind for some certain time. Whereupon this Word was spoken; *This is the great original Sapphire-Tree, which as a light springs up out of the Dark Valley.*

## JUNE 5, 1677
## INTERPRETATION OF THE ORIENTAL TREE*

[2F 17:8] §.Being much inquisitive to have the Mystery of this Oriental Tree, that sprung out of the Pure Element, opened further unto me; as I was waiting in the fire of pure silence, it was revealed, that the Tree was shown to make known, that this was a Degree beyond all in Paradise: for no such Lustrous Tree could be manifested in that sphere. Trees of Life and Righteousness might spring from there, but this Tree was a Diadem of Glory, that grows out of the Element of the *New Jerusalem.* Then was it upon my heart to plead thus with my Lord, Ah, my Jesus, what does this signify to us as to our present state? This surely presents the highest latitude of glory, which you yourself are capable of. We have many removes yet surely to pass through, before we can come to the clusters of this Stately Tree. As we now appear, what is more contemptible and vile? And if so in our own eye, what in yours? Therefore what time will or may be allowed for our transportation into such Fire Stones of amazing Glory. This and much more, which would be too numerous to record, was my expostulation. To which the Spirit made reply: That this Vegetable Stone must have several transplantations, before it could rise to such a Degree of Celestiality of Glory.

[2F 17:9] §.As first out of the dry, hungry, barren earth, to a ground moistened with the Dew of Paradise: there it has a Certain Season to work through, as a Plant of Righteousness, sending forth its fruitful operations according to the Heavenly Constellations, which work with it. It shifts itself into various forms, as the center opens for multiplication of the Vegetable Life; to bring it forth into manifestation of those more Eminent Fruits of the Spirit: as in clusters of Love, Patience, Meekness, Faith, Hope, Joy to Perseverance. All which are to spring up unto perfection, as making way for a Higher Transformation. For when these Fruits are grown to their full ripeness in any, then expect such a Pure Conjunction as does make up the very matter of this *Sapphire-Stone;* Which may be adventured to be cast into that Most Holy Burning Element; that all these may come forth as one entire Body of Glory.

## JUNE 6, 1677
## A SIGHT OF THE WARS IN CHRISTENDOM

[2F 17:10] §.This morning, about four of the clock, awaking with a raised mind, ready to entertain discoveries from that Invisible Orb, to which my whole heart tended to; I found myself suddenly carried out of my Animal Sense, and several ideas opened to me from the Upper Region. I saw in the Firmament of the Heavens Bright Figures, like Half-Moons, and great rolling up and down of the Starry Heavens, which seemed to be in a troubled commotion. Then there were great fears at the

sight hereof, among the Lower Spirits of this Region. Then I saw somewhat like a Standard set up with a writing upon it, proclaiming *War with all the Inhabitants upon the Earth.* And about these I saw Bows and Sharp Arrows. And because I saw this Pillar or Standard at a distance, I thought it was, or might not be real. And so I went to it, and touched it with my hand, and read the writing, which was, *Controversy with the Nations of the World.* Then after this, I saw the Clouds of Heaven pass away, and various Persons of Great Majesty descended down to the place where the Standard was set; and they appeared as those that were Judges of the Earth. And two or three of them made towards me, to speak with me: and their Presence was terrible, that I shrunk away. For my mean corporeity was very inconsistent to their Glorious Personalities. And this Word followed, This is the Lord, who after this Tribulation will come, with His Ancients to Reign over the Earth.

## JUNE 7, 1677
## RULES TO BE OBSERVED BY THE PASSENGERS THROUGH PARADISE TO MOUNT-SION

[2F 17:11] §.Then this Word spoke through me, *Haste and pass away from* Paradisical *righteousness to* Sion's *glory.* For let your condition seem never so mean and low, yet verily designed you are to work through all vicissitudes, till Palms of Victorious Glory in the Hand of the Great *Alpha and Omega* be given to you, which will make you to be the admiration of all in the Higher and Nether Regions. Then these Rules were given expressly in order hereunto.

[2F 17:12] §.*1st.* Suffer gladly the Transplanting Power to crop off all that it finds superfluous, dry, and sapless.

[2F 17:13] §.*2nd.* Permit no other Pruning Hook to come near any branch of your superior Life-trees, but that Flaming Word of the Spirit, that knows rightly to divide between the dead and the living.

[2F 17:14] §.*3rd.* Seek and make application to the Most High, for an Impregnable Fence, while these Fruits are ripening. There will be required an Invincible Guard, or else the subtle Foxes and Beasts of Prey may get in to make spoil.

[2F 17:15] §.In the *4th* place, then again watch not only against the invasions from what ministers from this Visible Principle, but from a near and more Inward Center, from which the Serpent may move, and twist himself, while you are yet but in the Paradisical Property. For in this First Transplantation lies all your danger. Therefore, if all the Fruits of this Mystical Life-Tree can but reach to a Golden Hue, so solid as to become a Fixed Seed, then you are out of all hazard and fear. But cast this Seed into Earth, Air, Water, or Fire, it will attract to itself, out of everything a Bright Consuming Glory. Then this Word was added, saying, Weigh and consider this Mystical Thing; for here lies the highest state of Perfection. Observe the Most Holy, in all His removes within your Heavenly Plantation: for every new engrafting from the Mighty Arm of Power, will be an evidence that He will not leave you, till you are made Scions, as Branches of this *Sapphire*-Glorious Tree.

## JUNE 8, 1677
## THE CARNAL MIND AND THE PURE MIND*

[2F 17:16] §.This morning this Word was given me to feed upon, saying, I, the Most Holy, will Tabernacle with a Spiritual Mind. My Life and Peace will bubble there as a spring; The Carnal and Earthly mind is Satan's Seat. The Pure Mind is God's Throne. Now choose which of those you will give place to; for accordingly your mind must be ordered: if for the High and Most Holy Society,

then all Spiritual. Then was that Scripture repeated to me, *For to be Carnally minded is death, but to be Spiritually minded is life and peace.* Which life of carnality is enmity to God, who will be evermore a Stranger to such, who shall know nothing of His Love, Joy, Goodness, Power, and Sweetness. For if they commune with earthly spirits, and things of this terrestrial being, then such Dark Influences are left upon their minds, that make them altogether unmeet to talk with God: or to take in of those species which tend for Transfiguring the soul into a Bright Body of Glory. When the mind is pestered and overcharged with thoughts that tend only for this gross elementary life, there is no room for the Holy Ghost; that proceeds and comes from such a Wonderful Being of Holiness, as the Father of Spirits is.

## JUNE 17, 1677
## FLAKES OF FIRE*

[2F 17:17] §.I saw a Ball of Fire, and out therefrom went Flakes of Fire, and fell amongst Thorny Bushes; so as they were no more: being consumed by the Flame. And it was said to me, These are the particles and Dispersive Powers, that will go forth from the substantial God-Head, to devour the Shrubs of the Earth. Then after this Internal Sight, I was as in a sleep, where much combustion, strife, and spiritual labor, for the attainment of somewhat, that was of eternal consequence. And such was the clamorous onset of Earthly Spirits, that for a time, I found myself sunk down into a Dark Valley. Upon which I awoke with great perplexity. Then after this I saw by way of Vision, a rich Golden Sled set up, and I was to slide down upon it: and a voice cried, Fear not, for an end to all weariness and travail will come, when this shall descend out of the heavens.

## JUNE 23, 1677
## SARAH AND ABIMELECH

[2F 17:18] §.This morning, as I was recollecting my interior powers and faculties, which I found had been somewhat scattered, by being let out and employed upon secular concerns: and which I found was as going upon thorns, grievous and unsavory; upon this my Spirit made application, with soul-meltings, for life-recovery and restitution to those wonted familiarities, and Divine Discoveries; wherein consisted all my peace, life, and satisfaction. Upon which my care now was, How we, who were under a Peculiar Obligation, should discharge ourselves of all, and every weight that had beset us? For it was presented to me, that while we were gathering together, what might accommodate our Outward Man, as *Paul* did the sticks to warm him after his perilous voyage; even so we, upon necessary and lawful things being employed, were in danger of the Poisonous Vipers, which would stick so close to our hands, that we should be constrained to awaken and call up the Most Holy adjuring power of the Mighty God: Whereby we might be able to cast them off, before they infected our pure Eternal Life-Blood; that so we might proceed forward in our Spiritual Work. For this Word was spoke, Why seek you to dwell in Ceiled Houses, and let the Most Holy in yourselves lie waste? Then again this Word met me, Take heed of the common sewer that corrupts the whole earth; that it break not in upon you. For it is a *Noah*'s Flood: it will sweep all away that are out of God's Ark. Upon which warnings I girded up upon my Watch-Tower, to hear what would be further opened to me.

[2F 17:19] Having had somewhat yesterday passing through me upon *Abimelech's* taking *Sarah* from *Abraham:* the meaning of it was this day made out further unto me; the Spirit taking up that Scripture, as in way of a Parable, to show us the danger in passing through with the Virgin Mind amongst Foreigners and Strangers; though not intending to take it up as a dwelling place, but only to sojourn as *Abraham* did in *Gerar*.

## JUNE 24, 1677
## ABRAHAM AND SARAH*

[2F 17:20] §.Now after this manner the Spirit did parley or commune with me. Know that you have had a Call, to pass out from among the throng of the Worldly Spirits; whereof *Abraham* was a Type, whom God called to sojourn as a Stranger, removing from place to place, till he did come to live alone by himself, and to be planted as a Root for a Mighty Offspring; wherefore the Most High had designed him. And so *Abraham* with his *Sarah* went through the Philistine's Country, and was in danger to have *Sarah* violently taken from him, who was to bring forth the Blessed Seed. Even so it was opened after a high Mystical Manner, that this *Abraham* represented the Spirit of Faith: whom God would bless and make fruitful through Marriage-Union with the Virgin-Wisdom. And it was further showed me, that there should be a Male and a Female, that would be made choice of, to bring forth an Eternal Spiritual Offspring for a True Church: which should be known from all others by terrible things wrought in righteousness through the Ghostly Power breaking forth.

[2F 17:21] And therefore note and observe, said the Word of Life, whether God in the Spirit's Voice has not spoken to you, to come out of the *Chaldean's* Country; considered both as to the vain, evil conversations of persons without, and to Internal Spirits within the Region of the Mind: out from both which there is to be a real departure. And as there are Two Persons that are thus to be deputed visibly, who are to withdraw and plant themselves, as out of all other Gathered Fellowships of the world: so are they to be extraordinarily endowed in giving Proof of Love, Faith, and Obedience, to Him that has power thus to dignify and make blessed. God knows *Abraham* was such a one, as would approve himself in all perfect walking before him; and answer whatever trust was committed to him by the Most Holy and Just One: to keep every charge, and command given, as did appear, when he came out of his own land, to go where he knew not.

### Faltering Faith

[2F 17:22] Now it was from this revealed, that *Those who shall be counted worthy to bring forth a pure Spiritual Generation must come out Internally, as well as Externally from that Native Country, where numerous spirits, that have no visible bodies do dwell, and have their concourse in the mind after a magical manner. Now here will be the trial, to go through their Earthly Regions, and not be hurt. For no sooner did* Abraham *falter in his faith through fear, but his spouse was taken away,* which if he had kept up in the Majesty and Authority of Faith, and had owned her, then the dread of that power and Spirit of Faith, and the Virgin's Beauty and Innocence would have been upon *Abimelech,* so as there would not have been any attempt of that kind. From this was a warning counsel in particular unto us: given in our present journeying on, through Strange People and Nations, which lie in our way, before we can come to *Hebron,* the City of *David* our King. And these are Mystically opened from within us, as occasions offer from without.

### The Hand of Faith

[2F 17:23] For the Prince of this World knows herein he has great advantage. While but passing through his dominions, he will have one device or other against those who are designed to pitch their Tents remote from his territories. Therefore he bestirs himself to raise all forces, to stop their progress; that if possible he might keep them under his arbitrary power: seeking always of subtlety to weaken the Hand of Faith, by alluring away the Virgin Love, and so he would make a separation. For in the pure conjunction of Faith and Love, they are knit together as the Bridegroom and the Bride, to travail together, till they obtain the Promised Seed: To whom all excellence of strength belongs, and Wisdom to govern those Nations that would usurp an evil power over the Blessed Seed.

### The Virtuous Woman

[2F 17:24] *Oh, said the Living Oracle, Take heed of denying your Pure Heavenly Mate: that is found in the comely dress of Love, Purity, Meekness, Simplicity and Holiness.* For this is that Virtuous Woman, who is a Crown to her Lord and Husband. *She will never depart from Him; without she be disowned through fear, and incredulity. None shall embrace her, but the Arms of Faith.* If she at any time be violated from her True *Abraham,* she will be as the Ark that will bring Plagues and Death upon those that would engross her to themselves from Him, whose True Spouse she is. *Therefore consider this, O ye, to whom this Word and Counsel is given: Keep up Faith in its own True Royalty; fear not Earthly Powers.* While you must pass through their land, trust in *Jehovah* your Shield: forfeit not that Dowry which the Virgin Spirit of Love will bring to you. Be watchful to strengthen what is in you already wrought; that you may not lose what you have thus far run and suffered for: even so you will find the Sealing Power from the Amen.

# Chapter 18

## JUNE 30, 1677
## THE BIRTH OF CYRUS

[2F 18:1] §.The voice of the Daughter of *Sion* cried in me: What ails you who are travailing for the Birth of Power? Faint not, for it is a God Almightiness that will be the issue of all those Internal Pangs of her who is travailing in the greatness of His strength. Every arm of Created Power is too short to bring it forth. *God must bring forth God.* Then queried my Spirit, where, and how, and after what manner will be so marvelous a thing? Sure nothing of Mortality can compass such an immensity, as a god's excellency in this world to be manifested. *No,* said the Spirit of Counsel, *the Terrestrial Man cannot have any share herein,* either to conceive or bring it forth: but yet such may be the high Act of Love in the Most Holy, as to open His Mighty Name *Jehovah,* through that mean form of mortality, and send forth somewhat of a deified express of His existence, in Terrestrial Creatures; so as to make them signify unto the world, what power it is that moves through them. Who have been in strong and unwearied travail for this all-saving Birth of Almighty Power.

[2F 18:2] For indeed such a Birth is needed in the world, that may deliver from all the evils of it. There is nothing but omnipotent force that will conquer the sinful authorities that have been so long in government over all the creation. Therefore what are you to look and wait for but the Birth of this Mighty Prince *Cyrus* to arise in, and to go before you; for it is by mere strength that He must prevail, to subdue all nations, whether they be within or without. Many have been the forerunners of this by Inferior Births, which you have passed through. As those of regeneration, and divine inspirations, and productive revelations, all in order hereunto: but all these have been too weak and too short to deliver out of the servile spirit. The Babylonish Power yet keeps and serves itself upon you, and will not let you go free; till this Mighty Prince arises to remand you back to your own land and native freedom again.

### The Babylonish Yoke

[2F 18:3] Thus I did evidently see that nothing but the All-saving Arm could pluck us back again. And moreover this Word was with me, and in me spoken: Pray for the *Cyrus*-might to be joined with the *Nazarite* Wisdom of Purity: for without power you cannot perform any of My pleasure, in subduing the Babylonish Power, that has enlarged itself over the whole universal state of things. It is well for the Elected Ones in this world, that their Redeemer is now a Mighty King over all Kingdoms. And this day is drawing near, for the Revealing of His shut up power that has been reserved with Him in the Heavens. By reason of which, a sorrowful Bondage and Servile Life has been upon the very nerves of the *New Jerusalem.* Who are now sensible, and now cry unto this Mighty *Cyrus* to appear, and to break for them this Babylonish Yoke: which has made them so long groan and mourn, as being made to serve with rigor under the Prince of Darkness. Who has had a long reign through his agents in this Principle; but his time is nigh worn out. Of which this is an assured Hope, when a deep sense is upon any of the Children of the Captivity: as upon *Daniel* and *Jeremiah, Ezra* and *Nehemiah,* who set themselves to inquire for that *Messiah,* who is to restore and gather together the Stones, for to build the *Mystical Jerusalem.*

### The Daniel Spirit

[2F 18:4] Verily, to such that sigh and mourn, for all the Abominations of Desolations, which they see to be of authority: To such, I say, The Most High will have respect, not only to reveal, but to entrust the Scepter of His Kingdom with them: who He knows will sway all in righteousness, according to His own Heart. They shall be His Kings and Saviors upon Earth. Yet once again, they who are of a *Daniel* Spirit, wholly addicting their minds hereunto, and in nothing else taking pleasure, but in diving into the Secrets of the Most High; that if by any means they might find out the Jubilee Year of Release, when the Mourning Tribes might return again to their own Possessions; even they shall be chose hereunto. Oh, the Wise in Heart after this look: waiting in True Spiritual Abstinence, as *Daniel* did; that so Eternal Secrets may be revealed unto them. Know how beautiful would those be, who shall bring news and glad-tidings hereof, from the Most Holy to the Mourners in *Sion:* that the Lord is indeed coming without delay; for a Full and Perfect Redemption to the groaning and oppressed creation. Even so Lord Jesus, come quickly.

## JULY 1, 1677
## THE MYSTERY OF BABYLON

[2F 18:5] §.This morning, after some special manifestations and intimate communion with the Invisible Trinity (whereby my spirit was as engulfed into this Sweet Celestiality, of that which passes all understanding), this Word uttered itself: Is it not good to dwell here, where the covert is all Love, and Defensive Power? Oh, call in others to meal with you here, if you delight to Sip of this Cup of Divine Pleasure, and then dispense hereof, according to the Vigor of Spirit felt from here. And commend it to him, who is a noted consecrated vessel, to take in of the same, with the unknown rarities which the Father provides for His own household; that so you may have no cause to wander out of His rich and fat pasture. While keeping here, your Shepherd will feed you, and guide you by His Golden Crook; and Translate out of one glorious place to another, till you shall come into the Beloved City.

### The Two-Fold Globe

[2F 18:6] This blessed winding in of my spirit was an introduction to somewhat that glanced past me of a Two-fold Globe; wherein was presented to me the Old Creation in bondage and servitude; the New One all in rest, quietness and freedom. I then besought my Lord, that it might again be presented clear and conspicuous to my view; that from it I might learn more of the Mystery of Wisdom. Upon my request, I heard as if Two Voices had echoed to one another, one saying, Bring forth of the White Eye-Salve, that the Eye may be yet more refined, to see into Depth of Spiritual Things; that so the Heart may follow the Eye.

### Two Worlds

[2F 18:7] Truly, no sooner did I hear this, but Two Worlds appeared to me: One sinking down into a dark bottomless valley; the other rising up into a flaming sphere. The world which I saw sinking downward consisted of such inhabitants as were all laborious, clothed with grizzled, dark, and cloudy garments. These were all restless, unquiet, running to and fro; busied in making instruments of war to hurt and to devour one another; with all provocations to evil, to wrath, and violence; exercising cruelty and oppression, from a derived power, given out by that Leviathan Prince, who bears sway in this principle. He has power under limitation, for a time, from the Superior Almightiness, which he puts forth according to his own Scorpion Nature, delighting only to see spirits in drudgery and servitude. It is and still has been his great design to give them full busyness. Therefore his

headpiece is always at work, to contrive some pompous and pleasant things that may wholly intoxicate and bewitch their minds. And others he puts upon hard labor, to eat the bread of carefulness, and to make to serve with rigor.

[2F 18:8] Thus I did, in an idea, see the present Visible Creation in great perplexity: and a Flying Dragon, who with his Wings overspread it. Out of his Mouth proceeded a Dark Breath, with which he did great hurt universally. For whoever hereof did suck in, went forth in the Might and Spirit of the Dragon: and such had the greatest promotion in his kingdom. To them power was given, to exercise authority in specialty. Now it was said unto me, This worldly principle which you have seen is the Great City *Babylon,* where my *Sion*-Seed has long been under the hard usage of the King of this Bottomless Pit: who would keep them evermore in bondage, and would not that they should ever remember, that they once had a Pre-existence in that Paradisical World of Liberty.

## JULY 2, 1677
## THE HOLY SABBATH OF THE CHURCH IN THE 7TH MILLENNIUM

[2F 18:9] §.But now the Ancient Records are brought to light, whereby it is given to the Wise among the Children of the Captivity, to understand their high and Eternal Nativity; and that for the cause of Sin they were brought into this Dark and Evil Region: yet not so, as forever herein to be included, till Natural Death does release, as they would persuade. For no such Decree did ever go forth from the Throne of the Most High. For after this Dark Grizzled Globe, with its Natural Inhabitants (all which, like troubled Whirling Wheels, grind the faces of one another), another shall arise, which shall set free from this Old Creation captivity. Upon which there was a mighty cry, by some that here were Sealed to the Day of Redemption, saying, Holy, Lord God of the Sabbath, let us come to rest with you. For we have been in Six Days Labor, and are now full weary of sinful thrall; and cannot but remind you of the Promised Liberty, which is to be brought to pass by the Travailing Daughter of *Jerusalem.*

### The Sion-Deliverance

[2F 18:10] Then was portrayed before me a mourners *Zion-eye,* beholding a bright Flaming Globe: upon the rising of which, the other Globe, like a Dark Stone, sunk down before it, into a Bottomless Depth. And this was in the sight of the Right-born *Israelite,* who here was suddenly snatched out, and Translated into a higher and more quiet Sphere. Oh, here was indeed the Sabbath of the 7,000 *Years!* All here were clothed in white, lying down as Flocks by their Shepherd of all Princely might. All were fastened together in a Golden Chain, to show there was no more to be a dividing; for the Sheep were never more to be scattered out of this Eternal Fold. For here is nothing but Seraphical pleasure, with the highest peace, joy, and rest from all former toil, labor, and sorrow. *And the Law of God, as a Gulf, is here broke up, and drowns all in its own Sea of Endless Love.* This is what was presented, for the enforcement of our Travail in Spirit, for *Sion*-deliverance out of the *Babylonish* servitude, which is now throughout the whole world.

## JULY 3, 1677
## JACOB'S STAR RISING*

[2F 18:11] §.Then was it with me to inquire with earnestness, Oh my Lord, when shall be this *Zion's* reign? All things yet in visible view appear in a dull sluggish posture: the Prince of Might yet has no Birth in the world, to bring into existence this New Creation. Who then, shall be the Beginning of this Celestial World; seeing that from some one or other the Birth of this Creating Power

must go out? Oh, by whom shall *Jacob's* Star arise, that is to bear the Scepter of Power and Dominion; that is to overturn the whole scene of present things, which has been under oppression?

## JULY 11, 1677
## THE MYSTERY KEY*

[2F 18:12] §.As to this, some days after, I was answered with good and comfortable Words: That we might not sorrow as those who see nothing of this Rising Day. For while my spirit was groaning in the Kingdom of Tribulation and Patience, I heard this sweet saying: *The Birth is Love, that shall restore the Kingdom of Joy and Power. And as it grows near, the pangs of Love will flow upon you, which will be* Sion's *mighty deliverance. Therefore revive, when Love's Throes take hold upon you; for it certainly foreruns the breaking forth of the Son of Joy and Strength:* who will rule the Earth, and ease the Nations of their burdens, griefs, and torments.

[2F 18:13] Then was somewhat opened to me of the Mystery of a Great Key, which I saw in way of Vision, held out to me; which was so great and weighty, that I made question in myself, whether I could carry it; and was loathed to take the burden of it, not understanding the intent, why it was shown and tendered. But this morning considering hereof, a Voice sounded through me: This is the Mighty Birth-Key, which shall open the *New Jerusalem* glory. No Terrestrial Being can hold it: for it is all Massy and Refined Gold, that will open the Sevenfold Wonder, and unlock every unknown Treasury, which has been Sealed from the Foundation of the World.

### The Key of Knowledge and Judgment

[2F 18:14] Then it was highly impressed upon me what this Key further signified to us. Then another Word swiftly put forth in me, saying: Those to whom this is given will have power to Bind or Loose, to Shut or Open, to Kill or Save alive, and also to Charge or Discharge from the Guilt of Sin. For it is the Key of Knowledge, and Sound Judgment, and acts absolutely in the express power of the Most High, to fulfill every jot and tittle of His eternal will. God the Father will well-satisfy Himself in such, whose propriety shall be to possess this All-powerful Key. Ah, my Lord, is there any now abiding in corporeity that is so eyed by you, to be an Instrument to act in the power of this Mighty Key? Sure no prohibition or decree is gone forth, but some one or other may be designed by you hereunto in this Age. But then the Spirit said, They must be such as are Anointed with that High *Composition Oil,* which at once Clarifies and Perfumes, as an Atoning *Incense;* whose Flame never goes out, till this Key be wrought out in the Fire Center.

### Master of the Mystical Science

[2F 18:15] Then was this Word of Counsel given to me: Set a work all your present force and might: it will be worth the laying out of all your cost and labor. You have an all-skillful Guide, who is Master of this Mystical Science. But He loves not to have to do with any spirit that is divided, with one eye looking forward, and with the other backward. He knows He shall never have honor or credit by such as are halting between Two Principles; sometimes rising up in the Fiery Wheel of Faith, then sinking down in the Leaden Scale of Sense, which brings back what faith has brought forward: Which is the great energy that gives the formation to this All-sovereign Key that is prophesied of. But none have been found here worthily qualified of many generations past. Therefore neglect all things of this low region, that so you may make this your entire business: from which let there be no starting, as you would enjoy the Blessed Projection of this Key; that will open for you, and will unfold to you the 1,000th number in Wisdom's Roll.

## JULY 12, 1677
## THE INTELLECTUAL FOUNDATION IN THE BREAST OF JESUS

[2F 18:16] §.As my mind was contemplating of the great advantages that an Eternal Almightiness would bring in to such, who would thereby endeavor wholly to destroy, and make an end of sin: there was suddenly a very fit Similitude set before me, in order to this, to show what would be effectual thereunto. There appeared a Bright Jasper Body, or Person, in the middle of whose Breast was set a Pipe of Gold Color, and two more, each one out of his side; the one was of Scarlet Color, the other White or Glassy. This was a very suitable idea to the present concern of those, who did know themselves to be under a mourning state of indigency upon an Eternal Account. For whose reviving this Word did further proceed: Whoever there be, who thirst to drink out here in Nakedness of Spirit, let them draw near; for only Pure, Simple, Naked Spirits can suck here.

### The Virtues of the Three Pipes

[2F 18:17] After this Voice, the Intellectual Spring did freely run, and made me capable of more deep reception, concurring with the True Inspirator: who gave me to understand the use and operation of these Conveying Powers, showing what the Virtue of each Pipe was. As first, that in the midst of the Breast signified the sending forth the Unction of Spirit: the Scarlet Colored Pipe the Blood, that is, the Life of the Heavenly Body, annexed to it. The Third Pipe was the Crystalline Water, which keeps and maintains all in an Immaculate Life of Purity. Out of these the Divine Nature is extracted. And whoever do not lay their Internal Spirits to suck out of these Pipes, can never arrive to any strong Spiritual Stature. For what does it avail to have the knowledge and revelation of this in Mystery, and be at a Spiritual distance herefrom? If Jesus, while in visible corporeity had not lain close to his Father's Heart, drawing continually, although highly essenced in Spirit; yet He could never have grown, if He had not derived fresh infiniteness of strength and power to hold up the Godhead Sovereignty in the Manhood. *So likewise, from this the Spirit did teach us that we should strive to reach to the Heart of Jesus in Spirit.*

### Jacob's Ladder

[2F 18:18] Here met me this objection: But how shall we thus abstractedly have access in our Spirits to our *Jesus,* who is in His Personality all Embodied in Glory, and we in Bodies of Flesh and Ignominy, so that we know not how to meet Him? This question was thus resolved me: These Pipes, like *Jacob's* Ladder, were fixed for descending powers to descend through them. *It is granted that we cannot reach up to our Lord, till we have a full grown Spiritual Body. Therefore* this Mystical Way of conveyance is contrived to bring us up to that high degree of fellowship with the Trinity; though no congruity there be as to the visible body. *Yet there is that Spirit in us, which by the drawing down this Life Sustenance, may recover its Ancient Sublime and Paradisical Body, which consists not of flesh, blood, and bones, but of an Immortal Virtue, Power, and Strength; answerable to what will suit with the Heavenly* Jerusalem *State.*

[2F 18:19] Then was it further showed me, that through these Three Conveyances did run all and every weighty precious thing, that was now inherent in God the Son. For want of understanding, and not finding out the way of this mighty attraction from the Head-Substance, we have discovered the shame of our Nakedness; wearing only the Vile Clothing which is infirm and weak, obnoxious to all evil, and death; fit and meet only to walk and converse with creatures of a mean and inferior sort, such as this world is replenished withal. But now a summons is, to call and show unto us what will

qualify and furnish us out for a Higher Society; as when the Pure Native Life of a completed Christ is sucked in by us. Then shall we be as He is: no longer in a condition of suffering, sorrow, and indigency, but of God-like authority. Which will be the Sealing Commission of the Everlasting Gospel prerogative: that will no more go forth in weakness, but in the finishing power of a Mighty Salvation. *Seek, and pray for such a Triumphant Day.*

## JULY 13, 1677
## THE SPIRITUAL BANKER*

[2F 18:20] §.We being met together in prayer, owning and presenting our many deficiencies as to Spiritual abilities; this Word was spoken to me: Apply yourselves to Christ your Treasure, who is made of that Lineage and Nature, that He might consider the better those, who are of His own Spiritual Flesh: For none else could so naturally care for them as He, who had assumed that Nature, which was liable to weakness, temptation, and all distresses. And as your Lord Jesus did outgrow all this, and swallowed up mortality, and all infirmities, by attending thereupon; so changing His Corporeity into an Ethereal Spirituality, whereby a Translation was obtained by Him into Mount Sion glory: so was it advised me from that Spirit, that stands always in the Spirit's Counsel, that an express charge was given by the Father unto the Lord Christ, to take care and provide for us also after the like manner: as having received all infinite fullness from the God-head's all-sufficiency for the same; that so He might be able to do for us according to His boundless power.

[2F 18:21] And therefore He has invited us to urge it close upon Him, our Appointed Trustee; that so we might be brought up, through all the several changes, to the same perfect and all powerful degree, even till we come to possess the self-same Beatifical Vision of the whole Trinity in glory. For it is so willed by the Lord your Creator, that He should now raise you up, by His secret Spiritual intrinsic operations, to His own Heavenly Stature; till that you may be presented faultless, as He himself is. *Therefore let none glory in Christ as their saving Jesus, till they can come to witness His Life-blood in them, thus redeeming and cleansing them from every blemish. For till this be done. Christ cannot bring them into His Father's presence,* to sit down as His Bride in Heavenly Places there with Him. Now is there an Open Door to you, set wide open, for you to enter through His re-entering into you. Make all present advantage thereof in Him, who is your Spiritual Banker.

## JULY 16, 1677
## THE SPIRIT OF REVELATION NOT CEASED

[2F 18:22] §.These weighty intimations coming from our Lord are well worthy of all observation: from whose Great Love they come to perfect what is yet to be done for us. For while the Ear of my spirit as the Oracle of God, stands open, clear, and free from the twisting stuff of all low, imaginary things, the Voice of the Most High frequently cries through me: by which *I can conclude, that the Spirit of Revelation is not in this Age altogether excluded.* For this Word thus spoke afresh to me: I the Lord's Anointed will give forth the residue of my Spirit: for which you, who are One in Faith, steadily await.

[2F 18:23] Then after this Voice, it was discoursed in the way and method of a Spirit, how that *the Latter Crop of the Spirit should be much greater and more plentiful, than what was in the Firstfruits, after our Lord's ascending: which was but as a Shower or Sudden Flight, which soon again stopped. For after the decease of the Apostles, it soon began to withdraw; and a long restraint has been, as to what they witnessed in their Day. All that can be said of what has been enjoyed by the highest order*

*of Saints, since the Apostles days, is but a Sowing into the Spirit, through Divine and Radical Light entering in, for conviction, illumination; thereby to make the conversation more pure and shining, which has been wrought from the belief of that Testimony left by these Holy Ones,* who were immediately inspired with the Anointing. *Upon which, to this Day, there has been a total and full Resting, as if God had nothing more to reveal to all eternity to any; Which is not so.*

### Vision of the Oriental Star

[2F 18:24] For the Scriptures (or rather the Spirit of them), pointed to a Greater Reserve of Spirit, that was to be poured forth. But till then, said one in his Epistles, You do well to take heed, as to a present measure of light, which in this long and cloudy day seems great and lustrous. *But there is a Star to rise out of your own hearts that may outshine all that has gone before, if you watch to it.* The Vision may there speak, though it has since been silenced, and that partly through Unbelief. *But the same Spirit of revelation shall much more in this Last Age revive again.* For through grace and love deeply imprinted, it is given me to believe in Another Rising Day of the Spirit, according to old and new prophecies. *Some breakings forth hereof are already witnessed.* And that we might have further grounds of hope, who do fly hereunto for fresh teachings and discoveries of the mind of God: *I did see a Vision of a Bright Oriental Star, which did spring, as out of the low center of the earth, at which I marveled. And I called one to rejoice with me to see the effects of this Rising Star: as also another person to the view hereof, I did with joy call in. And we beheld it, till it enlightened the whole earth with its beams: which it cast forth, as if it had been the Body of the Sun.*

### Vision of the Star Explained

[2F 18:25] §.This sweet manifestation, this Divine Opening or Vision, was granted to me to view, that so the reason why it appeared might be known. First it was showed me, that as in order to the Birth of Christ in the Flesh, the Wise Men saw His Star rise and go before them, till they came to *Jerusalem;* Even so in its rising, this Star signified the Mighty Birth of the Spirit, which would open through the Womb of the earthly property; where the Spirit has been long buried, and its glory clouded as in the dark gross body of sensual corporeity; but it will certainly work itself through. And the more Wise and Excellent in Spirit shall first see it, and feel its Rising Effects upon themselves, as their Birth-Star; which shall multiply to the Seventh Number: which only qualifies to stand within the Circle Throne of the Most Holy. The Seven Stars, which are mentioned to be held in the hand of Jesus your Mighty Prince of Peace, are to be distributed as the Badge, or Inscription, of such as shall be so perfected for a free pass into the *Jerusalem-Glory;* there to be in Oneness with Him, without robbery to their Kingly Priest, in all His throne principality: and to be added to the Enrolled Numbers of the Ancients, which are come to be victorious over the world, through Great Tribulation. So you will be followers of Him, through this Rising Star.

# Chapter 19

## JULY 17, 1677
## THE SEVEN ASCENDING STEPS, OR SEVEN DEGREES OF THE SPIRIT

[2F 19:1] §.This morning the Living Word spoke in me: You do not yet sound the meaning and depth of that which is further to be understood of *the Residue of the Spirit;* but I am come to search, and give you further knowledge herein. The Golden Cask of this Rich Oil has been in part let forth: Seven Pipes for the venting hereof, are as an Emblem to present the Seven Spirits that proceed out of this. Now well observe how many of these Spirits have been drawn out of the Golden Vessel, which represents the Body of the Deity, either in the foregoing or present age; and you will see what is come, and what is yet more to come, till the Seventh Number be finished. First consider the Prophecies and Promises, how they run in the Scripture Roll. The Spirit is distinguished with Seven Properties, or Operations, and Working-Powers. Each of these Spirits has their office and ministration, as dividing to each one in the Body of the Spirit, according to the measure of the Gift of Christ:

[2F 19:2] §.*First:* the Promise of Grace and Supplication is to empty out itself.

[2F 19:3] §.S*econd:* a Spirit of Love, Joy, and Peace.

[2F 19:4] §.*Third:* a Spirit of Consolation, of Prophecy, and Revelation.

[2F 19:5] §.*Fourth:* a Spirit of Counsel and Sound Mindedness.

[2F 19:6] §.*Fifth:* a Spirit of Truth, Wisdom, and Knowledge.

[2F 19:7] §.S*ixth:* the Spirit of Faith, for Healing internally and externally, and thereby doing Miracles of all kinds.

[2F 19:8] §.*Seventh:* This is a Creating Spirit: that goes forth to give being and existence to what seems not to be. It works on this hand and on that, and yet nothing which is inferior to itself, can it see. It works all in a silent still way: what it speaks it effects; and what it affects speaks forth what it is. It needs no orator to go before it, to declare from where this Holy Breath of Almighty Power moves. It rests where it will, yet unseen; yet felt, known, and tasted to good purpose, wherever it abides; it being the Head Principle Spirit, that governs and sends out the foregoing Spirits, and unites them into one entire Spiritual Body.

### The Last Paved Stone

[2F 19:9] Now, said the Most Holy Inspirator, I have here shown you the Seven Ascending Steps, by which you must come up to your Mansion Glory, to your Throne Dominion; to be what you were designed to be from before all worlds. Come now, and see what progress you have made, and how many Degrees you have taken. You may be comforted, who ascend up here together in faith; though there have been many attempts, and that strong ones, to pull you down, and to prevent your further ascent. But be strong and resolute this day, from that power already received; that you may go up, and stand upon that Last Paved Stone of Wisdom's strength and might; which will bring majesty and honor to you, but horror, confusion, and shame to whatever has sought to draw and plunge you in

with them, into the Dark Center of this dismal sphere: The which evermore fear, and avoid as the Dragon's Cell, where he loves to dwell.

## JULY 18, 1677
## THE GOSPEL MILK*

[2F 19:10] §.This day much refreshment from the bright beaming countenance of my beloved Lord, through free converse with Him, came thereby to my spirit. My spirit being moved to plead propriety, in what the Father had given unto him. Whom after the way of Spiritual Sight, I beheld a smiling face, looking through a ray, like to the sun. And a voice spoke: I will see you Face to Face, that you may hear my Voice. Then will your joy be daily full. Then I heard this Word: It is well you now believe that all spirit and mighty power is with me, to provide for those whom my Father has given me in charge. I am no engrosser to myself of this *Jerusalem* Treasury, but will that you should be Joint-Heirs with me, in the same Body of Glory. *But it is the vehement, strong, Thirsty Ones, who can draw out that Life, which I now do live in, and that in the highest degree of Perfection;* which makes me stand up in the Head Fountain capacity to empower Gifts of great consequence, according as you are able to partake of them.

[2F 19:11] Oh, that you would lie close in your spirits, to that Breast which is in pain, by reason of its fullness, till it has emptied itself, with the sweet lusciousness of the Gospel Milk. When tasted, it will make you be always lingering and strongly desirous hereof. The office of my Spirit is like a True and Faithful Nurse, to lay and to give the Mouth of your own Eternal Born-Spirit hereunto; but then of itself it must draw, and you must not be discouraged, though at first it does not come so flush. But some pains must be taken by you in this Spiritual Exercise, before the Breast of Life will open fluently: but when herein you have once got the victory, the bottles of Heaven will run free, emptying forth the very marrow and strength of the Deity. What else do you think can make great, strong, and powerful in the Divine Nature, but this very Life-Substance, which by the Mouth of the Spirit, highly magical is constantly attracting? Then you will be answered in what you have been so long in soul travail.

## JULY 19, 1677
## THE SEVEN DEGREES (CONT.)*

[2F 19:12] §.This Word was with me early in the morning: Pass on, you Worthies of the Lord, through all Measures of my Spirit, till you come to all Seven Degrees. Rest not in the shallow parts or streams, before you come to float in the place of the Broad-Waters, where the Spirit will be to you unmeasurable. For though it is an indiscernible strength, yet in it lies the whole omnipotent force, both of saving and destroying, creating and nullifying. This power will be inherent in them upon whom the Seven United Powers shall rest and dwell; which indeed will make you excel the very Angels, as to dignifying power, which never was their Natural Dowry, as it was yours in the beginning. But that you have lost, through sin and earthliness entering in, which has made you thus feeble, impotent and weak, that you can do nothing, till these my Seven Spirits come, each one gradually in their course, to renew your strength, *through the mutual concurrence of your wills:* which to me, I your Lord do own you have given.

### The Third Measure

[2F 19:13] Therefore I am moving my Spirit upon the face of your inward deep, till the whole Mystery of the Celestial Figure shall again be restored. Therefore I am calling the Eye of your Minds inward, that so you may take knowledge of how many Steps you have gone up to this Throne, and so

be encouraged to pass forward. You are arrived to the Third Measure, which is the Spirit of Prophecy and Revelation. Here is a pleasant standing, because you have prospects of the unknown scenes of glory. Here you have great advantage, because you live in the divine ideas of what is contained in the invisible sphere. Yet far be it from you to take up rest here, or like *Moses,* to die in journeying to the land where the *New Jerusalem* does stand. Yet Four Ministrations higher there are, which have been seen in the Mount of Vision. Who then now as high descended Spirits, *will* in mighty faith attempt them, and renounce what arises of fear and doubt? *As Faith and Love are the Wheels that bring here, so Fearfulness and Unbelief do bind down the wings of the mind.*

### The Sixth Step

[2F 19:14] Oh how slow of heart have you been, to believe what of these ministrations has been so frequently prophesied by my Spirit? Come forward on, and put forth that little Grain of Power, which you have already in yourselves, and see what you can make hereof. The more you act it forth, the more it will increase. For as the ministration of Immediate Revelation does more clearly immerse you into the Knowledge of what is Unknown: so the Mystery of the Highest Degree of Faith must necessarily begin to work therefrom, and that in such a way, as may be a Sealing to what is revealed for manifestation. For a let into Invisible Species of things cannot but quicken up faith, and make it strong in God: by which it may easily, yea most naturally act, and go forth in miraculous deeds; for confirmation to others of what by a Bare Testimony will not be believed in, a residue of Spirit. For this is also surely reserved, which is the Sixth Step to *Sion's* glory.

[2F 19:15] But before this can be perfected in any that look here for it, they must be of a through grown experience in the Life of Revelation. *These Gifts will not come down by Sudden Rushing Showers, as it was in the Apostle's times.* But now they will be consequents, which will follow those who gradually grow up from the very Birth-Day of the Spirit, into all the sublime perfections of holiness, as their constitution into a Christ-like Nature: For it is the Root of that Heavenly Matter, from which Gifts of this kind proceed; and will be Inherent in such pure and Sanctified Vessels. For they only stand in the light, counsel, and will of the Trinity, ready to obey and execute His will here on Earth; as the Angels of the Presence, who truly and faithfully do go forth in the light, power, and force of the Seven Spirits: whose fortitude it is to secure from all the wrathful conspiracies which are in this evil world.

## JULY 20, 1677
## THE FEAST OF THE SPIRIT

[2F 19:16] §.This day upon a foregoing Word which opened itself in me, as we were met together to Breathe the Life to each other, a super addition thereof was given me. The Word was from that of Jesus, crying in the Great Day of the Feast: *If any man thirst let him come unto me, and drink; then out of their bellies shall flow Rivers of Living Waters* (speaking of the Spirit). The Jew's Feast, being the Feast of Tabernacles, was highly at that day solemnized; from which the Lord did take an occasion to invite to Another Manner of Feast, presenting Himself as the Principal Dish to feed upon, and Well of Life to draw the Waters of Salvation from.

### The Heavenly Table

[2F 19:17] It was again revived to me in this Word: You are come to the Festival Day of the Spirit. Set by it, esteem it: spare not to take your fill. Tell me, Oh, you that beloved are, what from this Heavenly Table, where all variety of Spirit is, what is most relishable to your Heavenly Palate? Had

not I known you to have been in the Vehement Hunger and Thirst after that Food which is all Spirit and Life, you should never have drawn near to my Table. For to others this kind of Fare has been little understood, or tasted of; and therefore not desired. It is the Pure Birth of the Spirit that can only live upon that which is Spirit. As none can know the things of God but the Spirit, so none can taste God, but what is born of God. What else did your Lord Jesus live upon, during the time of His abiding in the humanity, but the Essential Power of the Deity? He still drew it in, as the invisible Bread of Life, which He had to eat that the world knew not of. Now said the Spirit unto me, *It will be to you, according to what you believe or thirst for, or after; whether for the Milk, or the Strong Meat of the Spirit.* For this is called the Feast of the Spirit, because it multiplies itself into corn, wine, oil, milk, honey, marrow, and fatness. There is nothing that can be named for refreshing and strengthening, which the Spirit of Jesus does not afford to the strong in faith.

[2F 19:18] Then again a further information was given, concerning the Ministration of Revelation; that though this Mount of Divine Vision, was not to be forever the fixed rest, of such who are under such a Dispensation, which must be owned as a high and rich prerogative; yet warning I had this day, hereupon, still to wait. For the Spirit did expressly speak, That we were come but to the Shallows of that Unmeasurable Deep: our feet did but yet stand upon the Golden-Sea brim, and that we must yet abide a while upon this Crystalline Stone, till launched into the Deep Ocean of all manifestation and knowledge, of what is within the Veil: Where all things of the Temple Glory are to be seen, not as in metaphors or figures, but in their own Express Beings, as the heavenly things themselves.

[2F 19:19] Then through the oracle-ear, this Word sounded to me: You have not yet known what it is to be wholly contracted into the Spirit; that is, as if you were without a body of Animal Sense, and changed into an unmixed Body of Spirit; for thus it was with *John,* when he saw and talked with the *Alpha and Omega.* Then the Word of Jesus was made good to him; as one of them who did not see Death, till he had seen the Son of Man in Majesty, coming in the *New Jerusalem Glory.* But this he could never have beheld, if he had not been changed for the time being into a Spirit: Which had so penetrated through his gross material body, that he knew himself only in a Body of Light. Therefore he called it the Lord's Day. Such a day, as the dark night of an earthly body must fly away from: for it could not abide, when though, but in the vision of so immense a glory, that dispersing itself so variously into the images of what so long had lain unseen. Even so verily, deeper may be your entrance into the Heavens, to hear and see what there is reserved, as your dowry, among those High-Throne Principalities, which *John* did see. Fear not, I say, to pass through this Bright Day; though the Night of your body of earthly sensuality shall by degrees pass away. Care not to hazard all that; so as you may be taken up still in the Visions of the Mighty *Alpha,* where new scenes of glory may open to you daily.

## JULY 21, 1677
## WRESTLING SPIRITS*

[2F 19:20] §.As we were met together in prayer, this Word passed through me, which plainly thus spoke: These are the Wrestling Spirits, O Father, that will not let me be at rest, till they have possessed the Kingdom with me. This Word did not a little revive me, and added a renewed strength, to urge the more full manifestations of this Kingdom; and that we might still our force unite, who have been so prosperous in our way through recourse by prayer. Which being done in faith, has great and mighty influence with God.

# Chapter 20

## JULY 22, 1677
## THE MAGICAL HEART, AND ITS SEVERAL PROPERTIES

[2F 20:1] §.This morning I had this further presentation portrayed out to my Internal Eye; The figure of a Fleshy Heart with many Eyes, and a Mouth, from which issued out a White Stream like a Breath. From which it was said, draw near, and receive in what Flows out here, which I assayed to do magically as well as I could. Then when I was come to my inward understanding Spirit, to know what this might signify, this Word passed through me: This Breath is your Spirit's Meat, by which you are to live day by day.

[2F 20:2] §.This Vision contained very much in it: which was made out, as it was cast up, and called over again in my mind, afresh teaching being given unto me: How this was the New Heart, which would be as the Well of Deep Waters, in whomsoever it was fixed. Many were the worthy properties, which belong to this Heart: for it was the Figure of the very Heart of God the Son, lively described in the rising *Magia.* Then were the several working-powers and properties manifested unto me; and I was also made to understand what I never before did sound. For it was whispered to my Inward Ear, saying: You little think or perceive what lies concealed within these Triangles. An Immense Treasury is here couched. Who can fathom his own heart, much less this, which is so all-seeing?

### Several properties of the Heart full of Eyes

[2F 20:3] §.*First property:* No slumber happens on them at any time. For slumbering and sleepy eyes argue a state of weakness. But these are Perfect Eyes, Strong Eyes, in their full strength and clarity.

[2F 20:4] §.S*econd property:* They are Watchful Eyes, Waking eyes; looking every way unto the heights above, and down to the depths beneath, and to the breadths and lengths of what in all the world are seeable.

[2F 20:5] §.*Third property:* These Eyes are Discerning, and Piercing Eyes: the wonderful excellence of these Eyes is this: Because their faculty is to pierce into things, so as nothing can be hid or concealed from them. This All-seeing Heart was with the Prophets of Old; from which they were called Seers. When *Gehazi* would have hid from *Elisha,* the Gifts of Reward received from *Naaman;* saith *Elisha,* went not my Heart with you? There is no hiding from the Eye of the Heart. *Samuel,* from this Inward Sight could tell *Saul* that his asses were found, and how that he was designed for a more weighty business than to look after them; having the matter of a Kingdom to propound to him from the Lord.

[2F 20:6] §.*Fourth property:* The Eyes of this Heart are clear, single, pure eyes, and purged from every mote; it is the peculiar property of this Heart to see God: and this Heart has a Mouth in it to speak from; and it speaks to the Most Holy: and it has an Ear to hear also therefrom. So that it is both a Seeing, Hearing, and Speaking Heart; therefore God sets a value upon such a Good Heart. Such a heart *Caleb* had, and *David* had: which heart much answers to God's own Heart; for it is God's own Heart, in man's heart. As it was said by one, we have the Mind of Jesus: it is as if he had said: We have the Heart of Christ. *Therefore the New Covenant runs all upon a New Heart:* God's Heart, in

man's heart, making man's heart a New Heart. All the revenue of Eternal Life is entailed upon what issues from a Renewed Heart, made New from God's Heart, indwelling in man's heart.

### Man's Heart, Christ's Heart

[2F 20:7] Here verily you are come to the grand business; for what the whole tenure of all Prophecies and Promises points out unto, is to this Seeing, Hearing, and Speaking Heart: as it belongs to the New Creature, which is God's Heart in man's heart, making it a New Heart. For God's Heart, or Christ's Heart, is the warm Life-Motion that flows through man's own inward heart. Thus God's Heart in man's heart, makes man's heart a New Heart, and a Good Heart: and makes man's heart a Seeing, Hearing, and Speaking Heart. When man's heart is made single, clear, and pure, purified from every mote of imperfection, and from all sin and self; then it can see God, and hear God, and speak to God. For it has the Heart of Christ in his own purified heart. *David* foresaw the worth of such a heart, when he so earnestly prayed for the creating a clean heart in him. It is a mere act of creation, by first raising or putting forth a power to dissolve the Old Dark Earthly Stony Heart: which the New Heart of Christ must come in the place of: For there cannot be any agreement between them, while they are together. For till the Old Heart is worn out by Degrees,

[2F 20:8] Oh, what strife, war, and contention is between them, so long as the earthly part can hold it out (as is found by the Saint's experience), till the Heart of Jesus comes fully to be fixed in the Old Heart. Then from the sight of Christ's Heart-Eye in our New Heart, the Pure Life will stir essentially: and such Spiritual Motions will spring, as great peace, love, and joy will come in upon you, as a bubbling Water of Life.

[2F 20:9] §.*Fifth property:* From Christ's Heart in a good heart made good, the New World, and the Nature of Paradise is placed there; and this New World is always provoking the good heart by internal species of heavenly things, generated therefrom, answerably to what the mind is employed upon, and raised up into. As in an Old Unregenerated Heart, this earthly world is placed in the midst of it, provoking the mind with those earthly species that rises from it to a close with them: so here, new ideas arise, and are abundantly brought forth from the Divine and Heavenly World, placed in a New and Regenerated Heart: Which the Spirit of a good heart feeds upon miraculously, while this worldly heart does see nor taste nothing hereof.

[2F 20:10] So strong, so high are *Zion's* Walls that are built for these Holy Hearts: that no groveling spirits, nor low earthly hearts can taste anything of their Seraphic Life. Whose natural soil it is to live like the hearts of beasts, breathing after their perishing fodder and sensual pleasures; but this Heart from Jesus in a Regenerated Good Heart is created for better things. It knows its own true temperature to be such as can no more lust after what is terrestrial: Because it has been so much touched upon by the Divine Flames of the Most Holy Altar; because it also has been so often impressed from the Sealing Powers of the Deity. Whose Breath does so strongly move, as to maintain upon the Good Heart a pleasant Soft Fire, burning as a Signal Witness, that a Sacred Presence lives there, for whom is provided the best of Celestial Cheer.

### Co-Union of Heart

[2F 20:11] Also because the Creating Word may still renew, a fresh life, with all its secret and unknown retinue of pure Spirits, that may be refreshing to the solitary: who indeed have made their choice to live in the Heart of Jesus, till with their Inward Eyes they have spied, where that only Massy Gold-Stone of all-working powers does lie. Which is only sounded by these Hearts: but to raise up this All-Golden Power is not found out by them, till they are come to have more Innate Un-

ion and Communion with this Heart. For by virtue of their co-union, there will be co-working. For thus it was between God and Christ; there was but as One Heart between them, in which they did in all things agree. From which it was said: Even till now the Father does work, and I work: that was by a mutual agreement, going out in Acts of Power, from deep counsel and Wisdom, as foreseeing all events of things. So it will be between Christ and a Christian: when they have co-union of Heart, then there will be co-operations together between Christ and a Christian. Co-union of Heart is when Christ's Heart dwells in a Christian Heart, and the Heart of a Christian is One in Union with Christ's Heart. Then will follow Intimate Communion and co-operations in harmony together.

## JULY 23, 1677
## PARTNERSHIP WITH THIS PERFECT HEART*

[2F 20:12] §.This Word ran through me as a Burning Stream, saying: Seek, make out with all speed for a partnership with this Perfect and All-powerful Heart. For it will not only discover a Spiritual Substance by a reflective light; but it will give an Inherent Being in itself. Therefore it is that Wisdom's Pearly Stone does shine, and all her Divine Magia does work. Let it not stagger you that till now you could do little, as to works of eminency that might demonstrate the Heart-Power of the Deity. See what has been wanting: The Heart of Jesus as a Seal must be set upon yours, that what is His may be yours in an absolute propriety. Such an innate life of conjunction will be of most wonderful consequence. Consider now and know, nothing is more expedient than to be found in this most perfect and All-Seeing Heart, that all you do may be wrought from here.

[2F 20:13] Then further it was testified, that it was not the Sudden Flights of the spirits up into this Heart, which would do or perfect the remainder of what was to be finished. For in that, there might be an uncertain motion; as our own hearts sometimes being up, and then again down: by reason of which so little has been brought to pass. For a steady heart and mind is Wisdom's Pavilion where she dwells; therefore this caution and word of counsel the Spirit did give: That when carried up at any time by the Spirit, into the Heart of Jesus, there to fix forever, and there to abide, till so knit, as Twins of Hearts to grow up together in. Then Powers and Gifts will spring there.

## JULY 24, 1677
## MEDITATION AND RECOLLECTION

[2F 20:14] §.The Word of admonition was given unto me: Take heed unto the Spirit's doctrine, and continue steadfast in the things which you have learned and have been assured of, knowing of whom you have received them.

[2F 20:15] §.From these Words it was showed me, That it was not sufficient that we were under the distillings of the Spirit-doctrine, to drink it in so as to let it pass away again. But this Word of Truth was to dwell, and to be deeply Rooted in us, as it is brought forth into a plain discovery, by way of precept. For in this day, the Word of the Lord coming to any one immediately, is so rare and precious, that God looks that they whom He shall herewith favor, should more than ordinarily set by it: and wisely observe, and make great improvement of this More Excellent Ministry. *For every slight neglect or disobedience is weighed over, as done against the Love, which not being answered by the Fruits of Love again, will cause the Spirit to retire to its own Center. Therefore, from now on live by every Word that shall proceed from the Spirit.*

### The Sweet Honey-Dews

[2F 20:16] §.This Counsel did very much reach my soul, engaging all the faculties of my interior mind, lest at any time I should let slip any Word so expressly spoken unto me from the Spirit; for it is Love and Grace worthy of all acceptation. And I must own it is good dwelling under the Droppings of this Fruitful Bough, which is loaded with all Sweet Honey-Dews; that no sooner are touched with the Twig of Faith, but the Eye of the Heart is both enlightened, and is therewith highly refreshed, as with its true natural food. Therefore one, many ages past, experienced this, when he cried out, *Oh, how sweet are your Words unto my taste, yea, sweeter than honey unto my mouth.*

[2F 20:17] The respect that the Most Holy, and Worthy Ones will have for this Living Testimony, will be evidenced by a disrespect and a real disgust to whatever is not given out from a Fresh Anointing. For the Right-Born Spirit tries all by its Taste; it can know Old Stores that has not that Juicy Life and Vigor in it: like fruits that have been long plucked off from the tree, or like a flower that has lost its true life-scent, by being cut off from the Springing Root; and so both fruits and flowers, though once fresh and good in their proper time, yet when laid up, and their moisture gone, and dried up, are no longer so. And this is well known and discerned by such a Spirit as has liberty to go into the Vineyard and Garden of God, to pluck fresh, and gather according to present spending.

[2F 20:18] And although there has been a living upon an Old Store laid up, yet know it is not to be so always. The Seven Years Famine of the Precious Word, and Ministry of the Spirit is come to an end with some already, who have made use of it for those ends designed: which was to sow their ground with it, and that by the Hand of the True Seedsman, the Spirit, who has made choice of good and well-prepared ground, to cast in that which will bring up a fresh crop of Spiritual Plants; and so still. As it was in an inward idea shown me, a field of corn, when ripe, it sheds itself into the same ground, out of which it sprang, and so renews food again: even so the Eternal Grain of the Living Word sows itself, and thereby we have it fresh in all its springing variety.

[2F 20:19] Now, who once have a Seed of a right kind, and a ground or Holy Refined Mold, choicely separated from all vile and earthly mixtures, they may promise themselves such a wonderful rich increase, as thereof not only to Feed the Mouths of their own Hunger, but may furnish others with this Life-Bread, which springs out from this Celestial Grain. Which will not come up barely as it enters into the Pure Soil, but it will be still shooting up and altering itself till the gross body of it be changed into a more excellent property: even so the Celestial Grain sown in good ground will not come up bare grain, but it will bring up with it the Stalk of Plenty and Fruitfulness with itself, even the One Stalk with Seven Ears; which number signifies the Seven Spirits before the Throne, in which subsists perfection.

## July 26, 1677
## The Measuring Line in the Hand of a Child

[2F 20:20] §.I saw in the night vision a Measuring Line, and it was in the Hand of a Child, who hereby was to fathom a Deep Ocean. Over which some were designed for to pass, and were commanded to follow this Child, clothed in White Linen, in a swimming posture without fear. For there would be no danger, so long as the Child with the Measuring Line went before us, as our guide. Then answered my Spirit, I am not skillful to swim over such Deep Waters, as these are, and how may we trust ourselves with one that seems to be of so little stature as that of a Child? Then when I came to consider of the Vision, I was made to understand the meaning of it: Why a Child must be the guide and leader of such, as were to swim from one measuring deep to another; till they had reached to stand upon the Rock, where the Everlasting Hidden Power was.

[2F 20:21] Then said the Word, From this know that it pleases the Ancient of Days to take up the form of a Child, to show there must be all innocence, and passiveness; no resistency nor repugnancy of will for contradiction. God will fill such with a Spirit Unmeasurable, and make them skillful guides to launch the ocean deep, to fathom the Secrets of the Immense Treasury. None can be swimmers here but such as are little, who are come back to a child-state. All that are within this Compass of the Measuring Line are ruled to search out what its length shall give forth day by day. For that Ancient Spirit, which was said, did move upon the Face of the Waters to bring forth the First Creation, now moves through a Figurative Body of a child-like Spirit, to fathom that Wisdom, Knowledge, and Power, that may bring forth the New Creation: Which is to be more splendorous than all foregoing monarchies which have been known in all worlds. From this then learn who they are, that shall be greatest in trust, power, and dominion; and who are to have the Golden Line of the Spirit committed to them: even the Child that is clothed in White Innocence. Of which Child-like Spirit, you are taught hereby to be.

## JULY 31, 1677
## MORE ON THE MAGICAL HEART, AND ITS SEVERAL PROPERTIES

[2F 20:22] §.This night I dreamed of a person that was unknown to me, who came and put a Piece of Money in my hand, and said, Go with this, and recover that estate that has been so long kept out of your hand. I was much taken with the kindness of this Stranger. And as I was considering how to effect it, I awaked. And thereupon found my Spirit, in a dispose for prayer, breathing forth according to the present sense that was upon me; and indeed it was a mere Ghost-like Power that moved me, and made request freely in me. After this my Spirit sunk down into a deep immersement, with somewhat of a High Celestiality that I felt as a covering upon me, which drowned all my outward sense. During which time, the Heart which I had formerly seen as in a fleshly mold, was now presented with a Golden Case on it; which was some few days past intimated, or called by the name of a Caul of the Heart. Upon which I had several matters of importance glanced in upon me, which this morning were more clearly made out in the Divine Magia.

[2F 20:23] This Heart thus clothed upon, was presented in a wakeful Vision, as the Piece of Money was in my natural sleep. And I heard this Word, saying, Oh, here is enclosed within this Heart, that which will fetch back all those riches of eternal substantiality, which was forfeited into the hands of the Great Landlord, who is owner and possessor of Heaven and Earth; and is relapsed ever since *Adam*'s Day. None from his time could ever buy out the full and perfect Revenue hereof, till a Marriage Union was entirely made with this Perfect Heart.

[2F 20:24] It was thus further amplified by the Spirit, that the Heart was of itself to be considered distinct from the Caul, so figured out in a fleshly form, as it first appeared unto me. This signified the Gift of the New-Born Heart, for softness ready to take in what impressions the Creator would make upon it. Meekness and gentleness being the Matter of its Composition, its Element which it lives is the Water of Life: from which the Pulse thereof beats and works. It swims in its Fire-Spark of Life, in *Shiloh* Streams of all Love and Joy; and so it is suckled with the meek water of Crystalline Purity: Which renders it meet to be the Eternal Virgin that revives again in Mother *Eve's* place.

### The Awakened Hunger

[2F 20:25] Somewhat of the Root of the first created matter, being left in *Adam*'s Line and posterity, will have it awakened in some, who are foreknown in the Love-Decree, and thereby obtain it through Strong Attraction, which can never cease working through internal violation: Which indeed proceeds from the Fountain-Heart of Jesus that now stands in the room of the Degenerated *Adam.*

Who by dividing from the Heart of God, had lost his Spiritual Force and Might for communication of goodness to his offspring. So that there must of necessity be found Another Way of conveyance, to feed and supply the Awakened Hunger, which is very Mystically Introduced.

[2F 20:26] None can anything thereof discern, but such as are centered in the very Life-Vein of the Holy Trinity: from which the true Feeling and Feeding is known. The Talent that Christ makes mention of is thus to be understood. A Spark of Celestial Life is to be found in the embers of naturality in us: which being sought out and found, and separated from what would have extinguished it, then becomes desirous of an enkindling. For if it abides alone, it will die; therefore it would attract a help to maintain its Life, which is only to be had from the Pure Altar-Coal. Which must alone feed and increase this Spirit of Fire-Life, which mutually co-works in order to the great design of a Christ-like perfection, which fallen man is to be raised again to enjoy.

[2F 20:27] Now this Word with great power was spoke unto me: You, whose Sparks of Fire are added to your persons by the inspiring Breath of All-mightiness, be still so industrious, as to recruit and gather in what has been (even before you were visibly existing) unadvisedly run out and lost, of this weighty substance: Which I, the Spirit of Jesus, am come to tell you is yet recoverable, as you stick and cleave to me in that All-Furnished Heart of most purified properties. Then I, your Golden Case, will be as a Defense, to secure your Springing Treasure within that Heart-excellency, which will advance you to a much higher state than that of the First *Adam*'s Degree. Oh, how will it make for the praise of the Head-power, and Prince of this New Creation to rake out of the Dark Embers of terrestriality, such Sparkling Diadems of glory? Therefore you Holy Ones, this is well worthy of your pursuit.

[2F 20:28] For what a dignity will it be for you, not only to recover what your first Father *Adam* lost, but to come into an augmentation in a Spiritual state? And as you are now sunk down so many degrees below the Paradisical Life, to your shame and great debasement: so by virtue of this Renewed Heart, annexed to the Golden Caul as its habitation, you shall rise Seven Steps beyond whatever your predecessors knew in Paradise: For had they stood in this Innocent Heart's Unity, they should have known greater tranquility in a God-All-Sufficiency, and would have been more satisfied in an Open Vision of Glory. Oh, my Lord, you bring wonderful things to light: and have added hereby a New Life to our hopes. Therefore we will be encouraged, onward to proceed, to attain this Perfect Heart. Which is to be separated from all Hearts that are centered in the Gross Sensuality: and which are circled about with the Gall of Bitter Enmity unto your nature; which is all gentle meekness, and Seraphic Purity.

## AUGUST 1, 1677
## THE THREE DISTINCT HEARTS*

[2F 25:28] §.This morning, being the first of *August,* there was presented to me with some other ideas: Three Distinct Hearts. One was a Dark Stony Heart, which looked like a piece of flesh that was dead and rotten, upon which fastened many grievous Serpents that fed upon the flesh thereof. Then I saw Another Heart that had all the Pleasant aspects of a Face, with Wings fastened by the Ears: by which it flew away from the Dismal Heart up to *Another* Heart, that was fixed in a Bright Orb; it being all in charity, sending forth Streams like Gold, to relieve the Other Heart which flew to it. And it was said in my hearing: These are the Streams that shall forever make your Heart glad: because you have fled away from the Vile Heart. Here is life-food for your Heart everlastingly; therefore stay with it.

# Chapter 21

## August 7, 1677
## A Dialogue Between Satan and Christ About the Redemption of the Body

[2F 21:1] §.As I was casting up in my mind the necessitous state that all mankind was plunged into, and why it should be, that there was no difference made as to the just and unjust, but it fell alike to both, as to all external things: nay, that the Unregenerate did much more abound with all this world's goods, than those who were of the Spirit's-Birth, I found a great dissatisfaction in myself, why Infinite Wisdom should so permit it; seeing that those who are of a sober, mortified, and watchful carriage, life, and conversation, should not have the Sovereignty and Lordship over what in this principle might serve their more Superior Life.

[2F 21:2] Hereupon I sunk down into the quietness, expecting some resolve might hereunto be given. Which by a certain Dialogue between two, I was given somewhat of the Mystery hereof to understand. The one of these Two appeared in a Bright Ethereal Cloud, in person: the other in a Human Shape, but all like putrefied flesh, unsound, of an *Egyptian* hue or color. Oh see, cried the Bright One, into what a strange degenerate life-being are you become? What makes you come so near to face me, who am in a Clear Body, that can have no fellowship with such Dark Bodies? Then spoke that Deformed One, which was the Prince of this World, I have assumed this Body of Deformity, of which it was promised, you great Prince of Might, Glory and Majesty, should set free out from the Impairing Element, which has brought all this uncomeliness.

[2F 21:3] Then spoke the High One, What further have you to charge me with? Go forward on. For I know you are come to upbraid the Son of God. Then roused up the Accuser like a Lion bold, and thus wise did speak: Oh Great *Melchizedek*, where is the effect of your Redeeming Blood, as to release from this Vile Body, that is obnoxious to all maladies, as to complaints of penury, and distresses? Even whereof, those that are given to you, no more be exempted, than the Children of my Kingdom. Nay, they are necessitated to come oftentimes for succor and supplies to relieve their exterior part: or else their very Animal Life might fail and die. Entitled you are indeed to be that Shepherd, which cares for your Sheep: but they are found straggling, and shifting up and down, even for their temporary sustenance. They are apt to crave among those of my fold, who do make no pretense to anything, which is brought in by the Spirit of faith.

[2F 21:4] Such who are of my lineage go upon a more sure way, prospering by their industry day by day. They, as the Palm Tree, do flourish, and spring, through all toil, and do wait, and so become honorable, and great in the world. While thine, as poor abjects, are the scorn and derision of all my kingdoms. Preferments debarred from them; they have looked long for the Day of Jubilee, when they should return to their great Lordships and Dominions: but nothing hereof is yet seen. Even they, who obtain the greatest friendship with the Almighty, nothing hereof do yet come to know. Where is now then (if you are a mighty God and Savior) anything signal for the complainants, that are in distress in bodies yet so grossly corporeal? So that no distinction is made from mankind in common in any visible power or dignity. As to this, my offspring do much exceed thine. Therefore I need not fear, but

my kingdom will yet increase, while your Little Flock are kept so low, poor, and needy in this region. (*Here ended the Serpent's expostulation with the Lord Jesus*.)

## AUGUST 8, 1677
## THE REPLY OF THAT BRIGHT SPIRIT AGAINST WHOM THE CHARGE WAS

[2F 21:5] §.O Satan, your nature is to vilify, and to strike with your scorpion tail against my head-sovereignty, pouring out floods of contempt; which rebound back to yourself. Now to answer you in all particulars of your charge:

[2F 21:6] §.*First,* as to your assuming the figure of that vile body, which is compacted all of putrefaction: for this you do upbraid me, that I do it not transform. Now, though I stand not liable to give any account to you of my will and pleasure herein; yet for the sakes of them, who have been inquiring in fear and humility, and have heard this your severe charge, I shall answer. It is then objected, as to that ignominious form of corporeity, which the Fellow-Heirs with me do bear: upon which a transmutation has been expected, that yet no such thing does appear, but they do still expire in all things like others.

[2F 21:7] §.Answer: *There is good cause why it has been so till now; because the Fire-Spark of the Deity has not burnt through in any, for the consumption of the drossy part: meeting still with cold muddy damps, that have often choked the Life-Flame; which is cast in from your engendering property:* Who, since *Eve's* day, are upon the revenge, to slay and destroy that which remains of the Heavenly Matter. You have had your inroad, as a Subtle Spirit, to prove and tempt all of her race; propounding this as an impossibility ever to see corruptibility made sublime. You have by your craft thus raced out that grain of faith, that should produce this White Lily Body. For my way of redeeming proceeds from within the Heart-Center: out of which my Birth-Life springs, and will ever display itself through soul and body in fiery streams. *It is a deceit to believe, that I am come to redeem any other way.*

[2F 21:8] I shed my Blood to purify and cleanse the Inward Ground; that so the Godly Plant of Righteousness might there grow, whose clothing is of Unchangeable Glory. For my own life wrought itself thus through: while I was found in the Earthly Mold, the invisible Perfect Thing could put transparency upon the Elementary Body. So no other way can I bring any to my own Transfiguration, but by the same enkindling, and by the Spirit springing up gradually. All of this kind will be understood, when the Wheel of the Will stands free and unclogged of all the Serpent's suggested incredulity tending hereunto. Who would have the heart-purifying work evaded, and us to look for Redemption to come, as a violent shower to wash away the vile body at once; which is contrary to my working method. Whose internal operation is to set free that, which is under great labor and strife, to get up to a flower of rich scented glory. Against which, O Satan, great has been your despite.

[2F 21:9] §.But now as to the second charge, *That my sheep are put to their shifts: and how that I suffer them to be exposed to great necessities, so as to have their maintenance out of the store-house of your kingdom, or else their Corporeal Bodies could not be sustained.* I answer, it is true, O Spirit of subtlety, that mine are exposed to great sufferings and trials; or else how could they be conformable to me their Head? There are also many considerable reasons, why for the present time it should be so. But this weapon of your charge will turn against yourself. As,

[2F 21:10] §.*First,* if they were not to be included with the universality, in the effects of that Curse that came upon all *Adam's* line, *O Lucifer, you would have had something to have alleged, as to God the Righteous Judge; that He would be partial to a Certain Number, in securing them from all of this world's calamity.* Therefore the Father has in Wisdom permitted it, that you may have nothing to accuse the Just One. As in *Job's* case, your envy was great, because he was perfect and upright. And being but in a flourishing state, as to honor and riches, and all fullness from this creation; what advantage did you take thereby? Remember that Word, *does Job serve God for naught? Is there not a hedge made up of all plenty and good things about him?* So then if my Elect Ones were not in common with yours, to take their lot, you would have whereof to glory in: *But now your mouth must be stopped,* in that those who belong to me are more deeply exercised in all suffering necessities, *as daring to hunt after nothing of this worldly pomp.* Whose eyes see through all these contemptible things: and as they live in Me, they are in-seeing into another manner of sphere, wherein their portion is.

[2F 21:11] Y*et know, they shall lose nothing by their being humbled,* through manifold distresses, and penury, while they are in child-like submission, and have hereby accepted the chastisement, that is due to their Lapsed State. All of which kind shall so operate, as to work out their freedom, when I have proved them by all the evil consequences of the curse; so as that I may say, they have been tried through all fires. For so it does become mine all for to be, as weighty stones of gold.

[2F 21:12] §.Then was this discourse maintained in my hearing: my Lord still taking occasion to resolve my doubts, and satisfy my queries. This Word was uttered, But what think you, O proud Prince of this Exterior World, who so many ages have by your agents lorded it over My Heritage; if that your time is near upon expiring? In that I shall call you to account, who have abused your sovereignty: For all who have been entrusted by you have been cruel in their arbitrary government. So that injustice, oppression, pride, self-love, and vain glory have born the sway to this day. Therefore it is no marvel, that those who are as the Pearl in my Eye, have been in such distresses; and oft-times forced to gather up the scraps, which your voluptuous brood do let fall from their rich furnished tables. This has been long permitted, but now *I am come to tell you, that your lease of years is near worn out, when you must give up to Me the kingdoms of this world. Who will seek out such, as shall be after My own Heart; that shall reign over you, and your hierarchy on this very earth.*

[2F 21:13] *Know that such I have this very day in my eye,* who are meek, patient, and lowly, and who have been proved *Job*-like, suffering the loss of all that pleasurable has been as to this world's esteem. These have stood against all your malice and envy, which has been poured out by instruments so assumed by you. These are those to whom the Dominion shall first come, and so by Degrees run through, till this world shall be no more your region. For the kingdoms of this world shall be given to the Saints of the Most High. Then you and all your sin-loyal subjects shall be ashamed and confounded; gnashing their teeth, when they shall see you put out of all power and authority. And those who have followed the Lamb faithfully through the Kingdom of Patience and Tribulation, shall be thus rewarded each one with Crowns, as from the Anointing Power, consisting in the Holy Ghost; whose day of almightiness shall here to the Chosen be known.

## AUGUST 10, 1677
## THE CLOUD OF TEMPTATION

[2F 21:14] §.This Vision was shown me. I with another person was ascending up towards a Mount, which was all green: and we were discoursing, if we could come up there, how we should then have escaped. What we saw cause to fear. For I saw many Vipers lie in our way; and one

seemed to fasten upon the heel of my fellow-traveler; which I set my foot on, and so escaped from it. And as we passing still on, after some space of time, there fell a Dark Mist, so dismal as we could not see each other: which was very terrible to me, for we had lost each other; but I saw it dissipated, and the lost found again.

[2F 21:15] §.Upon this was opened unto me in what danger we were. And it was said, Pray; for there is Cloud of Temptation, that has already essaid, that the work might be retarded. Moreover this Word was with me, rise, O *Abigail,* with Wisdom and Might: and give out what you are withal replenished; and thereby stop the ensuing flood. For all things from the Dark Kingdom conspire to keep you from finding the Way to My Holy and Separated Choir. Therefore those Dark Fumes and Smoke will rise, that so you might not find your way into that Munition-strength, where you will be secured out of all peril.

## AUGUST 18, 1677
## THE WALKS OF THE SPIRIT

[2F 21:16] §.After this I had a Word follow me, crying in me: *Turn not out of the way of the Spirit.* Which the morning before was in the Scripture given to me, *Walk in the Spirit, or else it will little avail you, to have transient visits from the Spirit, only to give counsel and instruction; if it be not in every jot and tittle obeyed.* For walking implies that primarily. Then was it showed to me, where, and what were the Walks of the Spirit. First they were walks very high and remote, and private. *The region or climate was so pure, that no gross earthly Spirit could have any consistency with it.* Then it was said again to me, that such Spirits could only live here, that had their first enkindled Breath from this Pure Element. And such as are born again out hence, *can well agree with no other air.*

[2F 21:17] These pleasant walks of the Spirit are all very lofty: and those, who stand in the low bottom of this principle, cannot see into that Pure Sphere, nor yet be walkers there. For they are among pure Spirits, all of one sort, such as *Joshua* was to have the privilege to walk amongst. If he would walk in the ways of the Most Holy, and keep his charge, and abide in the Inward Court; the Angel protested, he would give him walks among those who stand by the Lord. Which was no small preeminence thus to be among the Triune Society. Even so it was to me testified, that if we would but keep within the circle-walks of the Spirit, we should be conversant with the Trinity. And hereby it was said, we should escape the hurtful influences of those, who walk and live after the fleshly birth. *For what we are conversant withal, such we are: for whether Spiritual or Carnal, according to either, it leaves its impression readily.* Therefore this Word came expressly: *Know and keep company with your Bridegroom's Spirit: that will bring you into high and worthy acquaintance indeed.*

### The Cross-Ways

[2F 21:18] Now then consider, you stand now between Two Cross-Ways: the one is on the right-hand, the other on the left; the one ascends; the other descends into this world's deep. Now *there are those who would keep their walks in both these ways; sometimes they would be soaring up to God's Holy Mount, then descending into the Foxes Holds and Dens,* where all unclean spirits are. And such as are of *this sort will never make any riddance up to the Mount of Glory.* Therefore this Word of Love's Advice I give, said He that is the Way of Truth: To you who are called out of the world's walks; that you steadily keep your Eye where the Spirit does make his tract for you; and that you keep on your daily pace. Follow still the measuring line, that ascends strait upward. For there is no admittance from here to turn aside, because great loss will be sustained. To go backwards and forwards can produce nothing but woe and ill; for *no progress can any such make in this Ascending state.*

[2F 21:19] And as these walks are high, so they are very private, and reserved. No evil eye can espy the roads of the Spirit. What of gross corporeity can pierce into this bright Burning Element, where the Pure in Heart walk? A strong enclosure is here, so as no Beast of Prey can break in to disturb the solacements of Serene Souls that have gotten in here. They are secured by Cherubims, who hold out for their guards Flaming Spheres, that so they may rest void of fear. Then as to the pleasantness of walks, they are all smooth and plain. A sound bottom they tread upon, being all paved with solid gold; which is so transparent, that its very reflection gives light to walk by. Then again of each side, such Plants do grow, as are known by Name: they be most odoriferous, sending out such sweet perfumes, each flower springing out of the Spirit's Root; such as joy, peace, love, meekness, gentleness, and faith, with all tender compassionateness, increasing to all perfect good. *You may easily know when you are in the right walks, by these Springing Fruits on either hand of you:* and by the high Throne Powers here greeting you with fresh and new discoveries of their Kingdom's Secrets.

[2F 21:20] N*one that have walked here, can evermore desire to turn aside, because they can see, taste, and feel (in their degree) what the very Trinity can make them blessed in, from what they possess in themselves, as immense joys* that are unknown: of which some daily droppings you will still meet with. For as you do abide in the Spirit's Habitation, worthy things you may expect, which your Father secretly keeps in His own Breast, as you are made meet for them. To which end I will open a Burning Spring within you: which through a soft breath of celestial air, shall maintain heavenly clarity. Then will your God walk absolutely with you, and will be no stranger to your habitation. *But then watch to it, that when He comes, He may find you waiting there,* within that pure and all-endurable Burning Sphere: sucking and drawing still in the fresh gusts of Endless Love, which may work up to a refining Element; Whereby Paradise, that has fled away from this principle, may now again bud forth, and recover you out of the Curse. This is the very way hereunto; Therefore, said the Just One, take all heed to keep in the Spirit's walks, as you would see that renewed state of liberty, yet once again revealed in you.

## AUGUST 19, 1677
## VISION OF THE TWO TREES*

[2F 21:21] §.There appeared to me Two Trees: One in a field, the other grew under the shadow of a Mighty Tree, as in an enclosed place, with a wall about it, that was all set for fruit: the other was all blossomed, but on a sudden a Shaking Wind came, and blasted the whole tree, while I was viewing it. Then it was cried in my hearing: Transplant this Tree, or else never to perfection will any fruit come answerable to that Tree. Let it be fixed under the warm shade of the Almighty Tree for fruitfulness.

[2F 21:22] From this presentation I was given to understand somewhat that answered to that matter of doubt, which was often raised in me: What was the reason that such a fair progress should be made of growth, in this tree richly flowered from the very life-sap with beauteous appearances. Which in way of similitude answers to the state of a soul that has the Life-Root in her; but its plantation being out of the warm shelter, standing bleak, and open to the sharp blasts, on every side cold storms beating upon it, cuts off the tender blossom, which would come to substantial fruit. This was shown me to be the very cause, why so many holy good trees of righteousness, could not reach to the full grown fruit, but withered off in the very prime of their spring.

[2F 21:23] For by fruitfulness here, I was given to understand something above and beyond a pure and lively conversation, and a shining forth in those known Ornaments of love, joy, meekness and patience. These I may call the sweet scented Blossoms; *Here many a one stops, and goes no further*

*on:* but sheds them abroad. And then by the mortal life commixing with the cold sharp element of this visible region, *are they generally cut off before any such high degree of all-fruitful power is got up unto.* As was expressed in former ages, when their fruit was apparent from the Root of God's Almightiness. *Our Lord means this fruitful Birth of Power, when He tells them of the absolute necessity of their abiding in Him, as the Branch upon a Tree.* As much as if He had said: You can do no mighty works, till you come to be brought under Me, as that out-spreading Tree of Life. If so, as He told His Disciples, You abide in Me, and My Words abide in you, then ask what you will, and it shall be done. From this it may be truly inferred, that the eminent fruitfulness, which God the Father may come to be glorified in, consists in a large and full ability to do and act such things, as Christ Himself did in His assumed humanity, who was a tree of all kind of fruitfulness.

[2F 21:24] Now by this Vision it was also thus given me to know that the Tree, which did stand in the wild field of nature with a fence, did well signify the true Life-Offspring of the Most Holy, who might proceed to such a degree. But while walking in the open bare principle of this world, where storms of all kind of temptations would set on it, it is altogether improbable that any such could come to any ripe powerful fruitfulness. Therefore the voice did cry from the Upper Spheres in Love's compassion, for a transplantation to be made; that so the designed fruitful plants might come to be shaded under the great and mighty *Lebanon-tree.* O, what less will this be, but a very Translation from one principle to another, where life of another kind will most naturally flow: not a weak, deficient, barren, fruitless life; but a strong, invincible, all-powerful heart of righteousness in the faith-operation of the mighty God. Who to this tree shall make all shrubs, and even cedar trees of the outward principle to bow: when as your branches shall sprout out with such Christ-like fruitfulness. Suffer gladly then the gentle pluck, even by that Good Hand, though you are hereby severed from the very Root of this earth. Because you well-see that the Destroyer and Despoiler of all your desired fruitfulness, lurks at the bottom of that ground, as a Subtle Serpent, making new offers of temptations to beguile you. Therefore the Holy Watcher cries still, fly away from his Enchanted Tree.

## AUGUST 20, 1677
## MORE ON THE WALKS OF THE SPIRIT*

[2F 21:25] §.I have great soul-wrestlings, about a restraint from the broad walks of the world: The former part of the night I spent thus, being made sensible of the divine pleasurableness of keeping to the narrow track of the Spirit. I was then greatly thoughtful, how we that were, as in the midst of a thicket of wild thorny briars, should pass out as untouched, to get into that privacy of walking with God, according to the late words of counsel received from the Spirit; which Word followed me still.

[2F 21:26] In the midst of these solicitations that sprung in me, I was overset with a drowsiness upon my Animal Sense. And immediately I saw my own person with another, got up a good height upon a mighty bank, where some straggling houses were; and we were minding to do and act some petty matters and concerns in them. Of a sudden I looked down, and beheld a Sea at the bottom floating; and a voice cried, *Haste away, for here is no stay. This bank with all its buildings will be overflown, when the Sea breaks in.* With that I was afraid, and called to my friend with me to draw up higher, for here was no standing for us, the danger was so imminent. Then was shown to us, through some degrees of ascent, a place all plain, of each side railed: in into which we designed to make our way with all expedition. But the ground being parched, and bare, and slippery, we were constrained to stay each other by the hand; till we came to that pleasant walk, which was so secured, as before was mentioned, where we were without fear.

[2F 21:27] Then were we in another region, all encompassed with a Bright Element with Two Globes, all with Spangling Sparks about them: which was a vision so glorious, as could not well have been born, if the bodily senses had not been suspended, that so the Spirit might actuate free in its own specie; Whereby it may positively be concluded, that the activity of the Corporeal Faculties are a great impediment to Divine Vision. Therefore I am taught, whenever I would attain anything of this kind, that then I must be slain to the exterior imaginariness: and that an Absolute Death is very meet in this case. For there by the Spirit of the mind is made free to slide down into its own abyss, from where it was before it came into nature.

# Chapter 22

## August 21, 1677
## The Alpha and Omega

[2F 22:1] §.This night I heard a voice cry within me, *I am* Alpha and Omega: *This is the Name by which I will be known unto you.* Which sound awaked me, and thereby quickened up all the internal powers of my mind to attend the meaning hereof. Which, as from a spring, thus opened: That to know the Lord Christ by this Name would be a very considerable advantage to us upon several accounts. For consider what this Name carries and bears on it: signifying Everlasting Power, Strength, and Fortitude. I am, said He, not only to be known in My weak, ignominious, suffering, dying Name, but in my living, all-powerful Name; especially to them who are now to be raised up by Me, to this state of Celestial Dignity, as to be Anointed Kings and Priests to reign upon the earth: although it was necessary at the first conversion, and work of regeneration, that I should be known to you by my Name Jesus, for conformity to My Death. There is an appointed time for this also, concerning which you have witnessed; for if my suffering, dying, and bleeding Name had not first past through you to cleanse you from sin, and thereby to obliterate the First *Adam*'s name, you could never have been capable of this New Name. Therefore I your Lord am not ashamed to say, I am He that was once dead, dying out of that corporeal weakness, that thereby I might recover my own Ancient Name, which I had with the Father before the world was.

[2F 22:2] Even so know that it was expedient that you should know me, as in union with me in this Name, though in death, dishonor, and contempt; yet not still here are you to abide. For I am come to appear to you in that rising, Glorified Name, that was from Everlasting, which death could not cut off from me. It was only shut up in the immense Deity, till the death for sin's cause was finished. Which verily being victoriously overcome, behold I have put on that Wonderful Name; that secret has been hid ever since the creation in its lapsed state: but now I will manifest and open this Mighty Name unto them who have been incorporated into My Dying Name, as a foregoing preparation thereunto. To such I will proclaim my name *Alpha and Omega,* wherein is love, grace, kindness, goodness, peace, and joy from first to last. Then again they shall know further strength, power, victory, salvation and dominion through being baptized into this Name, which will be the effectual sprinkling with life-power from the dead.

## August 22, 1677
## The Water-Stone

[2F 22:3] §.Then was figured out the morning following, somewhat that looked Clear as Glass, or water coagulated like Ice, which was of a dissolving matter, yet formed as into a Square Stone; with Letters of Gold upon it; and it was held out by a hand breaking through a White Cloud. And this Word came with it: *Take, eat this down, you who have been made to drink into the Lamb's Dying Name: whose right it is to take hereof, that it may mightily operate in you.* Then said I, Ah Lord, who can eat down what is so hard congealed, this seems improper to be? This was answered from that Scripture, of *John*'s taking the Book out of the Angel's hand (*Rev.* 10) , and was commanded to eat it down. Then was that Scripture repeated also of *John* 6: *Except you eat my Flesh, and drink my*

*Blood, you cannot have Life by me:* Then was I convinced of the necessity thereof. For it was said, that this was the Very White Stone, that had that New Name, which was *Alpha and Omega* engraved upon it. The properties of which was not sufficient to be only revealed, and proclaimed to the understanding; for it would slide away therefrom again. Neither is it enough for to Taste only by one transient Vision hereof, but let it be your Daily Meat. For this Stone, though it appeared Rocky and Clear, yet to the Heart-Mouth it will be all candy and Sweet, dissolving itself as it empties itself.

[2F 22:4] Oh, then this did further arise from the Anointed Name, which had poured in of its Virtue, in which I did feel afresh, at the present time of writing hereof, that I might hereunto set my Seal of the rich Effusion which did come out. Who can best describe the Properties of this Name, but such who *feelingly Feel* the Virtue of it, who according to the measures that it has opened itself, so may they declare thereof? As *John* and *Peter*, when examined by the rulers, by what power they had made the Lame Man to walk: it was boldly affirmed by *Peter*, that it was by this Name Jesus, which is changed now into the Name of Sovereignty and Power, by which they acted forth. Had not this Name been poured in, and they filled with it, then none of these worthy deeds could have been done by the Apostles. But it was evident, that this Name of Strength and all-Healing Power was with them; and their very adversaries were confounded at it.

[2F 22:5] So verily this Mighty Name is rising again, for very much of it did open itself, as to the preparative quality, which precedes Miraculous Workings visibly upon others. For this Word was given to me, saying; This my Name shall burn, as an oven within, till there be no more matter for the Evil One to work upon; that so the proverb may cease, *Physician, heal thyself.* Or, *Pluck out the mote or beam out of your own eye first, before you undertake for another*. For now consider, that to act and work, and to do all in my Name uncontrollably, according to power and might, it is very necessary that so you, by a Celestial Tie of a powerful engine, may absolutely turn the whole course of the active nature; which is so prone to promote, and give all its force to strengthen the Man of Sin and his kingdom.

### The Effects of This Name

[2F 22:6] Now here the effects of My Name shed in, will first be seen: You shall know it not only by Taste, but Witness it, *running through* in every Intellectual Part, as Burning Gold, healing and purifying. This will be the First Wonderful Projection of this White Stone within. Then further it will proceed, you need not make any doubt. Take only this My Counsel, and follow what has been revealed to you. Let not your hand slack from here, though there should be none to bear them up, but the *Alpha and Omega:* who is without shadow of change: He is alive to bring the Kingdom yet about. Verily, there is nothing which the Prince of this World so much dreads and fears, as to lose his Seat and Place: so that he can have no more inroads within, by awakening any Evil Essence there; My Name, as Molten Gold, burning him out of the Internal Part as often.

[2F 22:7] By my Spirit, said the Holy One, this Principal Thing has been pressed in divers ways of openings, and set before you variously in similitudes. All which is to provoke you to follow on jointly; that so My Name might be as One in you, gathered thereinto; without giving way to what may be suggested from the Serpent for scattering, still to keep off that Great Blessing, which you may obtain in praying from this Sweet Name Jesus, now changed into *Alpha and Omega:* whereby the Kingdom will come into you in Power, through this Glorified Name running, as Golden Ointment, in you and through you. Then know that the kingdoms of this world are become His, who has proclaimed this Mighty Name, and has poured of it into you. By virtue of which they verily shall become yours: and

thereby you will despoil the great prerogatives of the now present reign of the Serpent and the Beast in this visible world.

## August 23, 1677
## Wisdom's Merchandize

[2F 22:8] §.I heard this Word this morning, Blessed and praiseworthy indeed shall such be, who make the First Battery upon his strongholds and territories; so as to lay them waste in this Terrestrial State. Then this Word was further given me: Oh, the Sinless State will do it. Then there were in way of Vision, Several Papers, as written upon, to my view; and a Voice spoke: Get them Signed with this Wonderful Name; and then you may have what you will, granted by Him who carries the Treasury Key. This much answered to a Word which I had sometime before, of getting Bills of Faith subscribed to. Then was further opened unto me the great freedom and efficacy that we might have, by entering ourselves into this Name: or rather by its entering into us, for the dispersing all its powers.

### The Mystery of His Name

[2F 22:9] Oh, what singular advantage it is to have such a Rich Banker to charge upon, while we are in this Foreign Country, and necessitous place, as to answer to all just requirings, as soon as the Father sees but His or His Son's Name to any petition, there is no scruple of answering to it. Christ told His Disciples, that till now they had asked nothing in His Name. Verily the same may be said of us. We have often pronounced this Name *literally;* but that has been little available. But we have not so asked, as to *breathe forth* all Pure Flames from this Name, without any of the Old Name mingling with it. For if so, then immediate effects would follow. For if at any time all pure inspiration did open from this Name, what is there to be named, that we might not be able to work and do, through this Great Name *Alpha and Omega?* Oh, might we come to be known by that, and no other name abiding in us! Then whatever was decreed by us on Earth should be surely confirmed in Heaven. It is well worth our looking into this Mystery, and making our aim at this White Mark: that will bring to us so considerable a Prize; as has been so freely revealed to us by the Spirit, that so through this Name we might be Conquerors over this whole principle.

## August 25, 1677
## An Apparition of a Deceased Friend, and the Discourse with Him

[2F 22:10] §.This night, somewhat before the break of day, I verily believed there lay one by me in the Bed. At which I was put into some fear: but then it appeared to be the Figure of my Deceased Husband, who discoursed many things to me, challenging Conjugal Love, and the renewing of that Old Affinity which was between us, with manifold circumstances thereupon attending. At which, at first, I was somewhat disturbed; but I took courage, and discoursed with him, and told him, I feared to have Union with any Inferior Spirit, till they had got up to the Highest Perfection. I asked him several questions, concerning which, he seemed to be silent, and could not give me satisfaction, as to his being in that full growing state, for the completion of this glorification.

[2F 22:11] But still I beheld him magically hovering about me, and he asked me for a Bible. While, I thought, that he was now above *that* way of knowing God, which I urged much, that he might now know, as he was known: but he gave me no answer thereto. Then he proved me with some small pence, which seemed to be like gold: which I set light by, and did not receive them; as not understanding wherein they could be of service to me, aiming at greater things from Wisdom's Treasury;

after I had said, that since his decease, I had made choice of an Unchangeable Mate: for whom I must now be, and for no other, but as they are completed in His Glorified Body; where I should rejoice to know him, and to meet him. Upon which he disappeared. And then coming to my exterior sense, I understood in what a Magia-Trance I had been. After which, about four o'clock, I found myself all inspired for prayer; that I might learn to understand what the Divine Will was hereby.

### Know No Other Spirit

[2F 22:12] And as I was considering in my mind of that Departed Spirit that appeared Magically unto me, this morning it was Spoken to me thus: I have now proved you, whether you would be for Me, and for no other spirit inferior to Me, who am the Lord, your Redeemer, that has given and shed my Saving Name into you. Which is a considerable earnest of what I further intend, as you abide in Nazarite Chastity, knowing no spirit, more but what can Mate itself with Me, in high Celestial Unity. Therefore hereunto, watch that you at no time be supplanted, of what is designed by holding out in Loyalty upon every account. For I should not take it well, that you should run into any one, if distinct from Me, though an Angel, whose habitation may be in a more high and heavenly sphere. Remember, a check for this was given to the Beloved *John,* whose Heart was apt to run into the Angel, that showed him the great Visions. Therefore was he bid to worship God, and to keep nothing less in his eye than the Supreme Deity, albeit that it is in a Glorified Humanity.

[2F 22:13] §.From here I took occasion to make this objection to my Lord: If thus we must be, Dear Immanuel, allotted for You alone, why is it that You, with Your all-taking Humanity and Personality will not dwell with us constantly, as to be a Covering to our eye, and a perpetual Attraction to our minds. For through Your absence we often find that temptation gets ground; for verily all our spirits are for mutual association. Therefore when You retire from us, we are then apt to fall in with somewhat that is near unto us. For You yourself know, that we are constituted of such working, stirring essences, that must spend themselves, either upon what is essentially good or evil; as either of these have greatest affinity with, and dominion over the mind. And if through a Superior Light, we swerve and turn aside from all that is grossly earthly, and that is of known sin; yet here we may be nevertheless at a disappointment of that express and actual conversation with you, as you are now a Transfigured Corporeity. So as great is our present disadvantage hereby, Oh, Lord Jesus.

## August 26, 1677
## The Law of Love's Loyalty*

[2F 22:14] §.This reply did spring from the Spirit of the True Bridegroom: Do you then imagine, or conclude therefrom, that I, the First and the Last, impose upon you a severe Law of Love's loyalty, in allowing and giving you no liberty to make any contract with either Angel, Spirit, or Creature dividedly from your Lord and Savior: Whose now you are, by what He has wrought for you. Let it therefore be of all acceptation to you, as a pleasing restriction, though accompanied with the disadvantage of My remove from you, as you are in mortal forms. Yet dear souls, let not this lessen your loves to me, who am, and will be to you ever the same, as if I were in a visible form of humanity. Let it suffice that I have planted my sublime Nature within you, where you may have all pleasurable conversation, if you turn in thereto. Where I will not fail to meet you, and greet you with fresh Joys and Loves.

[2F 22:15] Prove me herein, if I do not answer to that Conjugal Marriage-State, after which you do make. I will be yours, as you are Mine, and free from all others. No cause of jealousy shall be ministered on My part; for as a Sealing Witness you may daily read Me, as you are fixed with the pure Ointment, for to dip your finger in, and therewith Anoint your Eyes: that so you may have a right and

clear sight of Me, and of all that is of a Celestial Nature; and that is set out for your more pleasant and full rejoicing, as you shall take up your living in Me. Oh, here I invite you as my Bride, to make your Abode. Let all know, who have their habitation in this world of distress and confusion, that you have found out a Rest, which is far more excelling; being lodged in the Bosom of the Triune Sovereignty; that can command all great and good things to satisfy you, as you remain in constancy. Therefore over all this world's temptations maintain victory; that you may Inherit with your Bridegroom Revenues of Crowns, Princedoms, Principalities, over all universally, in the Marriage Knot of Unity.

## AUGUST 27, 1677
## THE CURIOUS WORKMANSHIP

[2F 22:16] §.Then was presented to me a fine piece of wrought work, that was given one to take out; and one said, They could never learn it without going to some skillful one to teach them therein. Then I heard a grave wise person say, No, find it out of yourself. Stir up the Gift which is within you. That is sufficient; and you will have the glory of it rest upon you.

## AUGUST 28, 1677
## INTERPRETATION OF THE CURIOUS WORKMANSHIP*

[2F 22:17] §.An interpretation was given to me of this Vision: That this Vision alluded to, and presented the Workmanship of God renewed in Christ Jesus, and so successively in those, who are Created Again in Him. Now the draught without is Christ the Lord, in all His holy and Perfect deportment, as He lived without sin in this world: in that He is become our Example; that, according as it is written: We might be as He was in this world. Now this Pattern of Perfection was given to us: but the curiosity and difficulty thereof put us, to whom it was offered, into a Plunge; not knowing how to take it out without a Guide. And so likely we might spend and run out our whole time, before we had attained half thereof; always learning, and yet not Perfected.

[2F 22:18] Therefore while I was in this demur, a Word came to me: This Skill must spring from that New Birth within. Yet it is in vain for any, by imitation, ever to attempt the Christ-like Life, till they be Born Again. As that grows up to the Degree of Divine Capacity, so it will be all-perceiving: and will aptly find out the Mystery of a God's Likeness, though incarnate in this Terrestrial State: Where Precepts and Patterns of evil are continually inviting; so that you are in danger of taking out a Wrong Pattern. But this Pure Birth in you will prevent that: for it scents all what is of this principle as a putrefactious life; and therefore flies from it to its own express incorruptibility; for which will proceed gifts and powers, answerably to what your Head Pattern here acted marvelously. *Look to it, for the Root of this Matter must rise from within your own inward holy ground. Call up the Ghostly Power of Might, that lies hidden there, and then you may be able to produce the same wonderful working piece, according to the form of the New Creation, which must bear down, and outdo all which came in by the Fall.*

[2F 22:19] Then was it further given me to know, that there would be a Trial and Probation made of whatever was wrought. It must be brought to the view of the Impartial Judge; whose rejoicing it will be to pass the sentence of Justification, found in the imitation both of the death and life, from the Birth Spirit which was in Jesus, *and is now entered into us, to bring forth the Same Express Workmanship,* in all glorious variety. As in the dying, so in the rising, conquering, reigning life: which is not to be manifested barely by words, but by Mighty Deeds, and Works, from the *Alpha and Omega.* Whose Day of Love, Light, Peace, and Joy, is already working, known, and *felt* in the New Born.

## AUGUST 29, 1677
## THE NARROW PASSAGE

[2F 22:20] §.This night I saw myself making hard towards a place, wherein I was assured of all desirable good, as relating to company and place. And as I was striving to reach it, there came a stubborn Prancing Horse in a Cart, and there was one went by to guide him. But the horse was so headstrong, that he would no way be governed, but would run in a hostile way towards the Gate that gave entrance into this Secure Place. Seeing which, I ran with all might and haste, lest I should be stopped; and just as I was entering in at the passage, he came furiously upon me, to grind me with the Wheels. So that I was put to it hard, but I passed through to great admiration, as if I only had a spirit without a body: so swift was my escape out of this danger. For I saw it a perfect design to have prevented my going in; then took I care of the well-minded person, that would have otherwise ruled this Headstrong Beast if he could have managed him; but such was his enkindled rage, that he would stand cross the Gate to hinder him, that was to be his Governor, from following after me. But he wisely crept upon his knees under the Cart, and so got in, and shut the Gate upon this Tyrannical Beast.

### The Everlasting Gate

[2F 22:21] §.This vision had a considerable speaking in it unto us, when we cannot but understand, there is a foreseeing Watchful Eye, that warns us of all evil occurrences that may ensue, while yet we are but in our Traveling Way. True, we are running hard to enter within the Everlasting Gate: but there is much lumber and stuff, which has loaded the Cart of the Mind, which is drawn by the Prancing Horse of the Will; that does drive furiously, and will not be under check or control, by that which sees its danger. This principle, with all its cares, businesses, and employs, are dangerous to step in, as a Grinding Wheel, to prevent our passing into that Pleasant Place: where none of those Inhabitants are found in any Working Dress. For they lived there by a Creating Breath, that renews all fresh supplies. There needed neither building, nor planting, nor vine-dressing, nor seed-sowers: for it was uttered by Voice to me, that passed through me, this is the place of *Jehovah's* Rest. Whoever can get through here, shall have cessation from all their works; considered as they relate either to the Mind Interior, taking thought or concern about its salvation: or to the Body Exterior, for food and raiment, health, or whatever else makes the life worth living in: it is to be here.

[2F 22:22] But then my Spirit objected: *Ah, my Lord, who could ever pass in here, while on this side of the Mortal Death?* Happily some there are, who in purity and faith, having finished their Terrestrial Life here, after their bodily dissolution may (unknown to us inhabitants of this working restless world) enter there. But no precedent we have of any that could ever pass, but through that known Universal Death of the Corporeal Body. For that would be a great and marvelous thing, beyond ever what was yet heard of; that any ever went in and out amongst us, that could give an account of passing out from us, into that Paradisical Sphere: it being shut up ever since *Adam's* turning out; therefore in this present time we must not look for it. For this weighty matter of doubt, I besought the Lord earnestly for a resolve in, whether or not such a Translation might be hoped for, and believed in, before Death was tasted of? My Spirit very watchfully waited for an answer, which after some time, was thus given to me to understand, and from the Word of Knowledge was uttered:

[2F 22:23] True it is, Oh soul, that none has entered these Gates in a Mortal Shape: neither can any, more than a Camel can pass through the Eye of a Needle: unclothed you must be of Sin's Body; the gross bulk thereof cannot pass in. And though you have been let thus far, by this full fraughted principle, yet possibly you may grow so wise and subtle, as to pass through, by the virtue of that Pure

Leavening Name: Which like Oil of Gold will all over-flame you, and so turn Gross Earthly Matter into an Ethereal Spiritual Body: for none but such can come to be so near the Trinity. Neither is it the Death of the Outward Body that can fit it hereunto; for if the Inward Body of Sin be not as well put off as the outward, it will avail little as to your entrance into this Supernal City. Therefore now, if in the throng of all present temptations, you can but get the conquest, then this Blessed Change will be from a Terrestrial Glory to a Celestial. What though this has not been evidenced, neither before nor since the Lord's appearing in flesh, let not that sink down your hearts into discouragement. *For there is such a Fire-Stone to burn, that now is kindled: that will effect greater things, than yet ever have been. Therefore stretch out the Neck of your Faith right forward hereunto; for the fearful, doubtful, and impure will be shut out of all hope of entering here. Therefore,* said the Just One, *faith in God will remove this Laded Cart: which did appear to stand in your way*

[2F 22:24] The Fury of the Beast and Dragon also are very great against you, animating such as are nearest unto you, and of dearest concern to stop your way. But be you both advised, by watching all opportunities, through patience, Wisdom, and lowliness of mind, to keep on your way. *For by the creeping through is signified great humility: by which the Serpent's subtlety may be supplanted. Let this then now stir up all care and watchfulness; for you will be put often times (while you are in this process) to great distress. But keep the Blessed Issue always in your Eye, and that will renew strength continually: For all of this high concern must be effected through immutability, pressing hard, though the Wheel of this Oppressive Principle threatens to grind you. Yet be constant; and persevere unto the End, and you will receive the Crown of Life.*

# Chapter 23

## AUGUST 31, 1677
## THE PRIESTLY MAGI

[2F 23:1] §.I saw multitudes of people this night presented to me of several habits, and languages, all in business and traffic: saving a few that were together gathered out of these, who were in a cessation from all matters of entanglement, in a waiting, interceding posture. Of whom it was said that, *These few should become a Strong Nation, and rise up to take the prey from the strong and mighty. For if there were not some allotted only for the Sanctuary Attendance, in a Consecrated Spirit of Anointing to approach the Immense Glory, nothing of the mind of the Most High would come to be known in their days.*

[2F 23:2] From this it was shown me, that by those multitudes, which were of all sorts and kinds in their several employs, that run on in the concerns of those are petty things, and satisfied with such mean achievements as this creation affords; it has been permitted, that they should arrive to no greater than Visible Things: and that only, by continued exercise both of minds and hands. But now by that other sort, which I did see do nothing, but stood waiting in a silent posture, as if they had departed from the whole universe of their fellow-creatures: *these united ones were to break open a fast enclosed center; where the natural freedom, and commanding power of Paradise lay. These all are by pure severance, not only from the mixed congregation of the wilder sort, but from those who were as cakes baked but of one side, who were not thoroughly Leavened with the Altar-Fire, themselves also to divide.*

[2F 23:3] For the Word thus spoke: Such who are all of One Refined Mold, who seek nothing else, but the plucking down of the Man of Sin from his Great Seat, which he has gotten in the world; and this must be done by sequestering from the confused noise of all, what may promote hereunto: For to some it will be given thus closely to set to the work. Or else what can be brought to effect of the primary state for to regain the Ancient Liberty, and Sinless Innocence; with higher degrees of what is now the Superadded State; which will ask the whole age of man's life, for to give attendance to this. It will be worth your daily setting to; that hereby you may undermine the Strong Tower of him, who would keep up his regency in the divided property of part Good and part Evil. For so long as this is allowed him, he will have the greatest share of this World’s Kingdom.

[2F 23:4] Now then, who would not set close to this more Superior Business, to find out what lies hid in the Magia Storehouse? Arts of a wonderful degree present themselves here. For as you can wade through this Deep Ocean, great Mysteries will flow out. As you may see comparatively what the Spirit of a Man has attained to by external industry. This has brought forth all that is delightful to the human sense: whereby all are deluded, who have looked hereinto. Oh, the Lustrous State that now this principle is wrought up to! It is become such a Golden Bait, that it is rare to find any, who are not biting and nibbling after. If therefore the Wisdom of that which is but earthly, has found out and invented such an inviting variety, to make this creation so desirable: What may not such reach unto, who have the advantage of that Spirit of Wisdom, that truly inspires to know from the originality of all whatever is to be comprehended? This Anointing is the Light that makes manifest what lies

in the Abyss of Eternity: and verily such as wholly bend the force of their spirits hereunto, may attain to great Wisdom and Knowledge; and so bring forth that, which may far outshine what is now existent in this creation. For till such Deep Magical Spirits are born, who come to make projection through Internal Sight of what is in the first cause of things, the kingdoms of this world, with the potentates thereto belonging, will be too hard for you.

[2F 23:5] For that Grand Prince that rules, and has such command in this lower sphere, has since the First Age of this world raised ten to one his magnificent Seat in the heart of poor deluded man. So that they, whose lot it is to live in this Latter Day, have greater provocations to overcome: as it is truly said: The last days will be perilous indeed, through the devices of the Evil One; who in and by his agents, finds out new inventions to enthrall and busy the mind withal, to prevent the taking in the true sense of what was, and might be again, that Blessed State of Sinless Liberty: For such has been this Serpent's Subtlety as to be a Lying Spirit in those who are teachers, to make believe the impossibility hereunto. By which he keeps his Seat of Supremacy universally hereby in the mind. For so long as this is, he knows no power of sovereignty will outvie his. Therefore this counsel of my Lord was expressly given.

[2F 23:6] And further, this Word, this morning, was added hereunto: That we should drink in this Pure Doctrine from the Spirit, who said, Be found faithful to the interest of your Lord's Kingdom; that it may through you, while in the world, be so manifested in Wisdom's force, and all-Spiritual might, through studying out all Divine Arts: as hereby you may pluck down the proud and lofty from their self-exalted spirit in the diabolical might. Your true labor herein shall have such success, as you may bring great acclamation and renown to your Lord and Savior, through all worlds, and to yourselves peace and joy, honor and dignity; because many hereby will flow in into my Great Name. when they are convinced that you bear the Standard of my Spiritual Might, in Truth and Righteousness. Now therefore be vigilant, according to what has been revealed, for the Love that you have for My Kingdom to appear so in this world, as all of the Old Dragon's may come absolutely to be shaken, and overthrown thereby. For whatever you do think this Prince of Darkness can suppress, he will: who is so mighty in this low region, till the Great *Michael* arises, to give Crowns to those who have been long in the war. To whom yet no kingdom has been given, but do wait here in expectation for it, and do not start from their Standard. Such, Oh such be, that you may yet be trusted with great command, to magnify the Great *Michael* in your mean estate.

## SEPTEMBER 10, 1677
## THE DEATH-CUP*

[2F 23:7] §.This day I was calling myself to an account; being sensible of that usual Springing Light, that was something shaded, and Revelations restrained for the space of a week: occasioned by dispersing thoughts, and letting in and busying my mind upon inferior things of this worlds concern; Whereby I was made suspicious of a greater loss sustaining, than anything of this world could repay me. And although there was nothing which I engaged in, but what might seem very just and reasonable to the eye of all creatures, yet that could not be my justification: Because we were under an Unknown Nazarite Law that was in special given: and therefore accordingly we are bound to obey it, who are concerned herein. Hereupon I descended down into the Deep Region of the Spirit, where I attended to hear what would be answered; which was again through grace renewed. For thus I heard the Inspeaking Word: Did not I, by My Spirit, often declare that it would be hard for anyone to keep My charge, who had not first cleared all scores of this world's accounts; that so you might have nothing to do, but to attend fully your Lord's business, who has called you for such a principal end, out

from all this Creation Service? Therefore then cease to be the Servants of Men: for since the Day of your free assignment of yourselves, His you are, to whom you did bequeath yourselves.

### The Sons of Zebedee

[2F 23:8] Upon this Word I found a great conflict in myself, having a great desire to depart, and to throw off every weight, that would tie and engage my mind. For I did well see an absolute necessity to be the Lord's servant alone: and to give myself up in constancy to that New Revealed Ministry; though I should hereby incur all creature's enmity. For my Lord, by a Secret Voice, follows me close; so that I can hardly get loose from Love's Charms. Yea, He drives upon us so hard, as plainly we might see the Holy One's design is to make a breach between this world and us; as foreseeing that until then, none can aptly be for His use and service. And verily this is the Cup that is given us to drink of, and to leave nothing thereof behind. It was what our Lord proposed to the Two Sons of *Zebedee*, who were ambitious to be equal in the Kingdom with Him: who told them: They did not consider what they asked. For if they understood what a Death-Cup they must first drink of, they would not have climbed so high in their desires. Therefore He deals plainly with them, and shows them both the necessity and possibility thereof; but gives the disposal of those Throne-Instatements to His Father only.

### The Upper Part

[2F 23:9] It was also at this time spoken in me, that we had begun to drink of this Cup, wherein the Deadly Draught was, which would Crucify us to this World; but as yet we had but drunk the Upper Part of it: the portion being so bitter, we indeed could never get it down at once. Upon which the Spirit gives this advice: Not to let one day pass without imposing upon ourselves to take out a draught from there; till all be exhausted, and drunk out. For the Cup is very deep: and at the Bottom thereof, lay that which will absolutely untie us from this Principle. Therefore let us not cease to drink from it, each one, to whom this Cup is given, and no time let us lose. For through Continual Sipping we shall see it lessen, and so by Degrees the effects thereof will be felt upon that which is to die. Oh, who will be so valiant and worthy in this age, as to hold out to the very last, the Bottom of this Cup to see? Then was it said to me, there was at hand Another Cup, immediately for such wherein was the Everlasting Water of Life. The operation of which is not expedient yet for to be uttered; till some have of the First Cup drunk all. O, Lord Jesus, be to us what you were, when you did take the last part of this Cup.

## September 11, 1677
## The Able Physician

[2F 23:10] §.Being in great agony in my head and teeth, through a mighty flux of rheum, this exercised my faith, and proved my patience internally, for some days together: and gave me to see, I was under a mortal influence, as well as all others. To which, in humility, I bowed, using yet some means to free myself from the present malady and grief that was upon me. After which, not being answered in the effect, but my distemper still abiding, I was convinced that I should have only applied myself to that Sovereign Name, wherein my healing was to be found. Upon which I prayed to the Divine Omnipotency, owning my neglect herein, in that I had not looked only for cure therefrom, to bring down help. For which cause I did believe, that I suffered under the Starry Constellations: with which the Grand Adversary did conjoin and concur, and send out his evil influences; rejoicing to see any, who thought themselves above his poisonous rays, should fall under, and be subjected thereunto with others universally. The sense of which I deeply took in, and found in myself a disquietment thereat,

uttering to my God many complaints. Upon which, this Word came to me, saying: When you have tried all ways and means, know for a surety, it is the Touch of the Deity alone, that must ease you. Had you here first fixed your faith, you might have been released from your mortal grief. Therefore now get up upon the legs of your faith, and stand without staggering, and thereby Saving Health may flow in. This was a Mighty Word of support: but much more ado I had to rally up my faith, to eye no other, but this Invisible Power forever.

## SEPTEMBER 12, 1677
## DAY AND NIGHT*

[2F 23:11] §.The next day I had a sweet respite from the raging force of that predominant humor which had so afflicted my exterior part. And in the night, I saw myself taken into a place, of which it was said, The Night shall not be known from the Day. For though it was in the dead of the night, yet for brightness it was as the noon day; which light seemed to me to descend out of a quite different orb, than this visible element. And I felt presently therefrom a Warm Beam sent from the Pure Deity, which did lighten me exceedingly; so that for the present time, I was as one out of the Body of Ponderosity; dreading, again therein to be found. For who can do less than despise their Corruptible Image, that is so subject to these outward elementary diseases of all kinds, when once they come to know and feel in any measure and degree that One Element, of which Celestial Bodies are framed, which can know neither sorrow, nor pain?

[2F 23:12] Oh, how may we come to be constituted hereinto so durably, as no more to see the vile nature of sin or putrefaction? Is it lawful to have an expectation hereof, before we lay these bodies in the grave? Yea, assuredly such a Day there is to be, which will swallow up the night of mortality: that all of the One Clear Matter of that Invisible Element, shall be in such Changeable Raiment, as that it will give us to see the Face of God in clarity. For this Word was given into me, that those who could hold out in a steady strong faith, might know in verity such a Transformation, so as to pass out of Corporality into an Ethereal Glory; putting on that which can pass into the Everlasting Burning-day; which no shadow of the night or mortality of death can approach. But it was further said, the putting off what should be in order hereunto would be very hard: yet sufficiency will be given to some, who are concurring in mighty faith. Therefore go on believingly, such a change yet possibly to see.

## SEPTEMBER 13, 1677
## THE SCHOOL OF THE DIVINE MAGIA, OR, THE GLASSY ARK

[2F 23:13] §.In the night I had a vision of the Doctor, whom I did see in great concern about building a Foursquare Room all of clear Glass: neither timber nor stone was in any part to be added to it; And I viewed it from first to last, till I saw it finished by his own hand. With great alacrity he said to me: Here we will wait in all reservedness, till the glory of the Son of God appears. But I answered, This will hardly be secure: for we shall be seen through this Glass, and Envious Spirits will break in, and so disturb our attending here. No, said the Doctor, We shall here learn the Art of the Divine Magia, whereby we shall keep all Invaders out. Or else that indeed would not be a sufficient fence for us, in regard found there is none, who are resolved to enter in there with us; but we both will abide there, till others of the same Spirit shall come into us.

## SEPTEMBER 14, 1677
## INTERPRETATION OF THE VISION OF THE GLASSY ARK*

[2F 23:14] §. The opening and interpretation of this Vision was given to me: That this denoted the Doctor's care and diligence in making provision for that, which was of greatest consequence in his eye: by methodizing first all things outwardly for this free and quiet assignment; Though according to the present conjuncture of things, this seemed then much to contradict, and to prevent the same, which was objected to me. But it was answered again by the All-knowing Spirit, that there was that so deeply inlaid, that would thrust out whatever would detard, from setting upon this more principal building, to which all must give way. This Glassy Room represents a Pure and Clarified Mind: in the which we jointly wait together as in one room; being of One Mind, and the same belief upon the great work: minding one Calling and Election hereunto, and not giving herein any account to anyone that has not faith. For I had advice, that it would little signify, to make any publication hereof, otherwise than *Noah* did, to wit, by an actual building for convincement, that we are of those, who are forewarned to withdraw from all of this Tempting Region. For a Deluge upon the world is foreseen, that will strip her Naked of all her Pompous Appearances: for all of this shall once again be desolate. Therefore the Word pronounced a blessedness indeed, upon those who were found enclosed within this Glassy Ark.

### The Return of Noah's Spirit

[2F 23:15] For it was testified that *Noah's* Spirit would yet return again, to condemn this present world: and that it would be demonstrable in some one or other, in whom a Spirit of Faith would stir, as from the Light and Knowledge, of what the Spirit of Wisdom dictates to them: and so it will be given to one to proceed from. It was also signified to me, that such Preachers of Righteousness would rise, near upon the Third and Last Ministration, who will internally prepare the Transparent Court for the Holy Ghost, by disappearing, and winding off from that First Building. Which is so thick, dark, and gross, as through that, no sight into matters of Celestiality could ever be attainable. Therefore a Crystalline Body is to be built up by the Tool of Faith, to be an Eternal House, for the Spirit to dwell and act in.

### Enoch's Day

[2F 23:16] As of *Enoch* it was said he was Translated by Faith, so as he did not see death. *Enoch's* day is coming verily; the Seventh Thousand year from *Adam* is now approaching, and will certainly be shortened. Wherein the world that now is, that consists of inhabitants made up of gross, elementary matter, shall suffer a dissolution: by that Pure Burning Element, that will break out from the Glassy Sea; in each one's Fiery Property, enkindling the Breath of the Almighty. Oh, then a creation of another kind than what is now visible, shall be in pure and perfect existence. For the Most High and Holy One, does in Wisdom, see meet to make a Transmutation among mortals: for neither the world before or since the flood has any way been pleasing unto God. Therefore expect now daily, the Mystery of the Incarnation will begin to work, in some hereunto Elected. Who, of a *Noah*-like Spirit raised, will be first to embody themselves in that Ark which is pitched? Within and without with the Oily Spikenard of the Spirit, that is the environing power, that will keep off all batteries, that shall be made against this Transparent Ark.

### The Second Noah

[2F 23:17] Thus upon this Vision it was revealed unto me: Seeing that after this manner the Third World is to succeed, it would begin after this method here described by the figure. *But Oh, my Lord, who shall be this Second Noah, who may assume such a Transfigured Body, whereby may be an an-*

*swerable Offspring, all of clarified Spirits and Bodies, to replenish the New Creation, in which God may be well pleased?* It was answered, that *Elias* would come, and take up his Mantle again, and do the Mighty Deeds, which shall make good all Prophecies. But it would only be known in its Day, who should personate this faithful *Noah:* only this know, where you see Faith begin to work in any one so high as to overrun all sensibility, such a One shall surely lay God's foundation for a New World.

### The Transmuting Tree

[2F 23:18] Now then, give way unto that Transmuting Tree, which yields altogether the Fruits of *Faith;* The Root thereof is to be found within yourselves. This is its Springing Day. Therefore let not its season pass away from you, as it has done from others. It is not enough to know it springing in your inward ground, but the constant feeding is that which by degrees will bring Redemption. For by keeping to this fixedly, you will famish the Life of Sensibility, which has done all the injury in confining you still within the shell of sinful mortality. From which there is no other way to be freed, but as you can move in the very body of All-mighty Acting Faith. This kind of faith has had a long sleep: but the Great Archangel is now come to awaken it with His Spirit, in them who are laid in the Lord's Death-Tomb; that will first hear this Trump, and be raised in Meet Bodies, and Clear for the Bride. Who may ascend into the New Jerusalem with a Blessed Offspring of New-Born Spirits from this principle: and so bring down Him, who is King of the New Creation to Reign in the Earth.

## SEPTEMBER 15, 1677
## THE PEARL OF FAITH

[2F 23:19] §.This morning I was considering this change that eating on Faith's Tree would produce. Which was naught else, but the Power of Omnipotence, which would beget to an Unchangeable Life, if the right kind of this Faith could be attained. For by way of similitude, a Tree with Branches of Several Fruits of Faith was presented to me, and every sort of Faith had its proper use. But not to mention those Common Fruits, that grow very frequently in the internal ground of those, who are looking after Renovation: those Fruits, as it was said in another case, our Fathers ever since *Adam* have eaten, and are found mortal, and so are deceased. But this Principal Fruit, in which is to be tasted the strong Spirit of the Life-Essence of the Deity, will be of another effect: to wit, Eternal Life will be sucked in verily by that.

### Choice Fruit

[2F 23:20] But who can give us of this right Fruit of Faith to eat on; seeing it is out of all mortal reach? We long have fed upon the fruits of the Lower Branches of this Tree, as others have; but hereby no mighty thing has been done, or any Translation out of this Death-Valley has been seen. Ah, my Lord, what a great thing is this, that you are now putting us upon? Surely you do not permit us to aspire after that which is not at our hands required, but to become such who are to walk with you in the New Jerusalem Glory: and to be like pure Nazarites, all White in Bright Bodies, and Seraphic Flames in Pure Spirits. But Oh, this Choice Fruit, which the Flaming Sword does keep, must come by Gift. As it was shown to me in and by a representation of a Pearl: which in way of Vision I did see was brought from an Unknown Land, and tendered unto me, as free, out of a Person's Hand, which was Unknown to me; having other Sparkling Stones, which were all tendered to me: but the Pearl was of great eminency, much outvying the rest.

## SEPTEMBER 16, 1677
## INTERPRETATION OF THE VISION OF THE PEARL

[2F 23:21] §.Coming to consider of the Pearl, it was by Word given unto me, saying: This figures out the precious Pearl of Faith, that shall again be given to the Saints, to work miraculously by; who in long patience, and hope, have waited for the Manifestation of such Powers and Gifts, as become the Glory of the New Creation to shine forth in. This is that Goodly Pearl that is the stock and merchandise that Wisdom bequeaths to such, who have sought to be Traffickers on those Substantials, as are to be found in the other side of the Glassy Sea. For nothing that can be gathered up here, out of all this Worldly State, we can make any Heavenly Merchandise of. Therefore our Lord often commends unto us this precious Pearl of Faith, as well knowing this is a Gift worth seeking and looking after. It is such Prized Jewel, that if once in our possession, we may have any exchange for it. Do but send it out from where it came, and it will turn to Treble Advantage.

### Faith's Victory

[2F 23:22] But when I considered, that this Pearl, had not of late years, made upon anyone such rich return; hereupon I questioned whether to any it should be given in these Latter Ages. So it was given forth to me from a True and Certain Record, that though this Super Eminent and All Transmuting Faith was the mere Gift of God, yet there was required those Inferior Acts of Depending Faith to be put forth; by way of pursuance of this, which Crowns all the Lower Degrees, that must be as the Ascending Steps to this Throne Dominion, which is called Faith's Victory. So that the Lower Degree of Faith in us, must reach after the Highest, by a Restless Seeking, and improving the present Faith attained. For that Scripture was repeated by a Secret Echo of the Spirit, *Faith is the substance of things hoped for*. The faith in God will forcibly draw into possession Him, who is the Author and Spring of this Almighty Faith, that can do whatever it pleases. Therefore it is said, *Seek, and you shall find,* that is, *We must grow from one ground of faith to another, and not give over as fainting and desponding, till we Ascend from Faith to Faith;* so near to the Heart of God our Father, as to affect Him with such Faith as works by Love: that so the Grand Mystery of this All-Effecting Faith may be both revealed and dispensed as a Gift unto us; and then we have the substance of whatever has been hoped for.

# Chapter 24

## SEPTEMBER 29, 1677
## THE FATHER'S NAME

[2F 24:1] §.As the Doctor was in prayer, this Word passed through me: You shall be Marked with the *Father's Name;* then no slaughtering weapon can harm you. Upon which Word I much exercised my mind, diving to know the Spirit's meaning, what that Mark would be, and after what manner it might be Imprinted on us. And I as attended with all heedfulness the Rising Spring of pure Revelation, it was thus given me to understand, that to be Marked with the *Father's Name,* is no less than to be Transformed into a Virgin Body. The bearing of this Name in the Forehead was shown to me, would be the putting on a Visible Form of God, as considered in a Glorified Figure. Which may admit of such a kind of pure matter, as has not been seen or understood: therefore it is well said none can know or conceive what they may be changed into. *John* in his Visions saw the Lord in several appearances of luster and glory.

### Degrees of Celestial Clothing

[2F 24:2] There are Degrees of Celestial Clothing. *Isaiah* had a sight of God that made him cry out that he was *undone,* seeing the disproportionableness between the brightness of a Sparkling Glory, to a dark polluted being. Likewise *Ezekiel* saw the Flaming Majesty of Glory that the very Seraphims covered their faces at. Upon which, the Spirit set it home upon me, that we might not over-rate ourselves, while the Lamp of our Eternal Spirits were but yet under the covert of a Dark Earthly Pitcher. For no glory can shine out, till that be broken away from the Internal Flame, that lies hid within. Which is the True and Right Begotten Spirit, who when it comes to call over its high and Eternal Preexistence; considering what it was before it came into this body, and taking in the Divine Sense hereof, is not at rest while yoked and hanked with such course and putrefied matter, as these fleshly bodies consist of. Seeing therefore a Promise is left us, both in general and in particular, for returning to such a Refined Corporeity, as may best agree with the pure Trinity, let us draw up hereunto, with full assurance of Faith, that so we may hereby reach to this all-securing Mark: which will Redeem us from among the Inhabitants of the Earth, and give us entrance to our own Heavenly Place.

[2F 24:3] What is it that has made all to die, and leave their carcasses unchanged in the region of this wilderness, but the resting satisfied in that corruptible form of flesh in all its diseased properties? There has been only a talk and a belief concerning a Redemption; but all the highest have reached no further than a Regeneration in part, and an Illuminating of the Mind. But where is that fair Image of the Heavenly, that shall never fade nor die, that our Lord verifies He would raise up in the Last Day? Which was declared to me *to be a Resurrection out of the Grave of that Mortal Body, which, at present, we visibly carry as a Sepulcher: in which there may Mystically lie hid such a Spiritual Body, as only the Trumpet Sound of all-powerful Faith can bring forth into visibility.* That so to some it may be given to see the breaking through of that, which may resemble the Glorified Figure of Him who is the First-born from the Dead.

[2F 24:4] This is that Body, in which the Lord Christ did the will of His Father. And we can never expect to go on to do it, but in the like figure of all-powerful Spirituality; in which the Life-

Quickening Spirit may have a suitable organical body to actuate itself, according to its own original purity. Who by coming into a terrestrial form, that is only animated by a life which is from this Visible Element, causes the great contest and strife, so as the Spirit cannot do or act according to its own Eternal Property. The which now coming to understand, we see how by this Animal Life of Sense, we are bounded and limited from this we are made to seek after, our disappeared and Paradisical body.

[2F 24:5] And truly, were it not for the provocation and strong instigation which I feel again from Him who would be unto us altogether this Immaculate Body, I have enough strong temptations from my sensitive part, to acquit all such hopes and expectations, and to be satisfied with a Mixed State, as to the one part heavenly, and the other part earthly, the whole term of life here. But having had so many remembrances by Voice and Vision, that constrained me to pry into this Mystery, and having many Testimonies from the Holy Scriptures to confirm what was secretly revealed: which came in, and were opened to me, to prove the certainty and lawfulness of such a hope, as cannot make ashamed: I am not suffered to let go the Faith, and shall only in brevity mention those, which were brought before me:

[2F 24:6] First, *Matthew* 17: Christ's own Transfiguration, as the Firstfruits of this New Jerusalem State. Then *John* 3:6-8: *That which is Born of the Flesh is Flesh; and that which is Born of the Spirit is Spirit.* Though till now this has been understood only of the Birth of the Mind, and of the Soul's Regeneration, yet a much deeper thing has been manifested to me: to which I must give ear, to wit, *the Fleshly Birth brings forth the Fleshly Body, but the Spirit's Birth brings forth a Spiritual Body.* Then 1*Cor.* 15:12 to the end of the chapter: *That whole chapter is to be understood according to a Transforming Sense.* Then 2*Cor.* 5:1-4: All which shows the expectation of the Apostle in this matter. Then again, *Rom.* 8:23: Waiting for the Adoption, to wit, *the Redemption of our body.* That of *John* 6:49-50: *Your Fathers did eat Manna in the Wilderness and are dead.* This is the Bread that comes down from Heaven, which a man may eat thereof, and not die (v.58). This is that Bread, which came down from Heaven, not as your Fathers did eat Manna, and are dead: He that eats of this Bread shall live forever.

[2F 24:7] I am not ignorant of the many objections that will be made against most of these Scriptures, by such as only look through the Veil of Sense. But these precious Scriptures did fully learn and satisfy me, that such an Incorruptible State, that should never see Death, was by us to believed (*John* 31:26): *And whosoever believes in me, shall never die, believest thou this?* Many more to this purpose were called over, and interpreted, which may come forth in their Season; these for the present may suffice. These Holy Scriptures give us to know *that we, as to our Visible Bodies, are in a Strange Deformity; out of which, we may lawfully hope to be Redeemed.* And whoever have Faith herein, without wavering, may certainly see such a Translation. For this Word did sound in me, *According as your faith extends, so it will in this respect make an alteration.* Oh, who but such as are Mighty in Faith shall live to see the Old Mark of the Beast worn out, and the Father's Name planted and engraved on us; Which will make us as the Sparkling Stones of a Crown lifted up, and as an Ensign, where the place of our habitation, by the Most Holy shall be appointed.

## OCTOBER 1, 1677
## THE MOUNT OF ELIJAH, OR THE MYSTERY OF FAITH

[2F 24:7] §.Upon this I strived much to thwart my sense, which was in great mutiny against this Gospel Transmutation. And as my faith did get up, Reason's Club beat me down, so passing some

hours in great controversy hereabout in myself. After my natural repose I saw myself, with some others, standing as on a Hill, where no visible fence was, but the loftiness of the place. The inhabitants that were in the plain below, observing us walking there, were in great indignation, and summoned us to come down, to share in what was in common; which not yielding to, they provided Instruments of War, as Arrows and Guns to shoot at us, which passed over us, and beside us, so that no harm befell us. For we withstood them all in great confidence of that fortitude, which those lower inhabitants could see nothing thereof. And the Shout of the Voice went forth: *The Spirit of* Elijah *will be seen again on the Mountain of Faith.*

## October 4, 1677
## Creating Faith*

[2F 24:8] §.This morning it was thus spoken in me: Into what Heart has the Mystery of Faith wrought forth itself, in the true nature of creating faith? No Resurrection it has had in these Last Ages. Therefore you do well, who now are searching for it. Be wise to undermine what has, as a Mountain, pressed it down: for it is that which will bring back what was banished out of Paradise.

## October 5, 1677
## The Glassy Trumpet*

[2F 24:9] §.I heard this night in my sleep a Voice calling me, saying, Draw near, that so you may know great and deep things. Upon which I was awakened, and saw a Clear Glassy Trumpet held out: and a Great Counsel was held by some, that all were in privacy in a reserved place, only I did hear their sounds and voices, but I could not see their persons. After which, musing hereupon, because all passed away before I could make anything hereof, the Word said, Yet for this Secret your Spirit must launch and wade into a Deeper Ocean.

[2F 24:10] §.Upon which my Spirit sunk unto a good degree into the Still Abyssal Center, out from which all Light of Wisdom opens. And this pure Glassy Trumpet was made mention of again. For it was said that none should ever sound this Trumpet, but such who could attain to walk and move upon Faith's Holy Ground. Then I took occasion earnestly to intercede. And while I was praying for this Mystery of Faith to be revealed, it was spoken in me: You seek that which is so weighty and Mystical, that time must be allotted to draw or extract out of the Full and Perfect Number of Co-essentiality of Spirit, which is attributed to the Holy Trinity. Into this you must search and dive, for your spirit is of the same Eternal Line and Nature; and it may recover what it has lost by descending into this Terrestrial World, of which course matter you have formed a body of flesh about you: wherewith be content for a while, till the pure Spark of Faith shall refine it for you, and make it all sublime.

## October 8, 1677
## The Sparkling Stone of Faith*

[2F 24:11] §.The profession of faith was still urged upon me, as the only Gift which would renew all things out of the old frame of nature. For the teaching Unction further revealed to me the supereminence of this Golden Grain of Faith, which is the product of the Deity, wherever it shall be found. Therefore I had a charge in these Words given me, saying: Suffer not so rich a Talent as this to be hid only in and with the Sacred Trinity. Come, oh restless mind, and I will show you where and how you must feel this Creating Breath in its first beginnings of life. These rules therefore observe constantly: First, then know, that the Center of this high extracted Spirit of Faith, lies in the Golden Ocean Deep

of Love; So from this take notice that only a mighty, vehement Spirit of Love shall bring forth the life-acting Body of the Holy Ghost, which indeed will all be manifested in Love's strong ardency.

[2F 24:12] See now in what ground this Choice Pearl be found; the mere strength of Love must give entrance where this Almighty Dowry is. Love raised up to its first Virgin Purity, will make faith descend in all its assumed majesty. Love and faith have an overcoming omnipotency attending them: God will suffer Himself to be conquered by the Spirit of Love and Faith, as He said: Concerning the work of My Hands command you me. Nothing can God detain from such, if they remain in the Ardency of this Meek Love-Fire, as in a Still Flame. Therefore through the augmentation of this pure burning Breath of Love, which as an ascending Spirit, can pass into the very secret Abyssal Deep to draw into itself that very faith, by which all things have received their existence; such a Spirit sent forth in the cooperation with Love, will effect that Transparent Formation, which may well become the pure beaming glory of the Blessed Trinity.

[2F 24:13] Therefore receive this from the True and Faithful Witness: That Love is, and must be as the Circling Ring, in which this Sparkling Stone of Faith will fix itself as a signal monument. Wherefore now see a precious Bundle of Love is all necessary, as a prepared vessel, into which the highest drawn matter of all Spirits may be put. This pure essence of faith can live or lodge nowhere but in the Virgin Bosom of Charity; which is so comely and innocent, that a truer qualification cannot be nominated. God is love, and therefore how can He be strange or unknown, where the Flame of His own essential property is found? All-transforming Faith will no doubt be given to such, as a Golden Balsam to heal that which is demolished. As witness the body of frail mortality, which is shut out from all those that are of ethereal forms, and angelical figures. Let this Medicinal Stone be of all value to you, for renewing of immortality, that you may be like those of that high order: Who can behold with great freedom the face of God, and may have room to continue among that Royal Society. Then search and try yourselves hereby, whether you have this faith of activity, which will go forth in all Spirit and Life.

### The Great Mistake of "Saving" Faith

[2F 24: 14] There has been a great mistake about that which is called Saving Faith, when as there has been no Salvation wrought by it, because the old form of a sinful body has not been put off thereby, the whole professing number of Christianity has very much deceived themselves in a dead act-less faith. But to you it is given to search and seek, that you may find the Quickening Spirit of Faith: Which you shall know by its working effects. St. *James* in his Epistle gives a true character of it, when he speaks of *Abraham's* Faith, which was evidenced by works, by which faith was perfected. Henceforth, said the true Author of it, let mighty works and deeds justify the Spirit of Belief, according to what degree it is risen. Contend for the ancient prerogative which was with the Saints of Old; for it is that energy of God, by which all in you must be created new, to the magnificence of your Savior, who will first appear to you by this Spirit of Faith; that so you may raise your own dead, and set at liberty that which has groaned under the First *Adamical* Birth.

[2F 24:15] This pure extraction of Spirit may have a Hidden Birth, in those who are in the life of perfect charity, and they not know at first, that this Worthy Gift is there. For the very Hour and Time of this Golden Balsam dropping in, may not be perceived by the vessel or person that receives it. As Christ told *Nicodemus,* that this Holy Breath, none could perceive its coming in or going out, so Christ in the Spirit does again confirm this Word. And this counsel is given to you, who are stirred up here for to wait; seek, and pray, know it may be with you, before you are aware. Your obedience will be fulfilled in sending up constant Flames of Love, to the Fountain Heart of the Blessed Trinity. In

which at one time or other the Breath of the Holy Ghost will mingle, and then in pure humility you may try to excite its power forth, so as it may be brought into no derision. But first find such ability as your Lord did, when He said, *Lazarus come forth,* which was Faith's undeniable Seal; which is both lawful and expedient for the Lamb's followers to receive. Be now such as need not be ashamed of this lively hope, and steady profession of this *Faith of God,* as an Inspiring Breath, which will certainly give a high and wonderful Witness: no impossibility in this vocation will be understood, because its working tool is the Creating Word.

[2F 24:16] After this free and open discovery let into my mind, I found faith and love winged up as a Twin Spirit springing, that if possible this superexcellent Gift might be so given unto us, that confession might be made to the Lord, that this Spirit of Faith *is truly risen,* therefore great and mighty things do show forth themselves, though for a long season it has been hidden.

## OCTOBER 9, 1677
## INTERPRETATION OF THE MOUNT OF ELIJAH, GIVEN ON OCTOBER 1ST)

[2F 24:17] §.As to this Vision [October 1st], the interpretation thereof plainly is read in the Book within, which bears the Living Testimony hereunto; signifying those living acts of faith, which sometimes have carried our spirits up to *Elijah*'s Hill: Where are not only batteries from the Potent King of this low region: but he does make war with, and by his agents, as taking notice, we are those which do separate from his kingdom. Therefore we may expect nothing less but a beleaguering throughout; especially when they perceive that we are such, as would overturn that endeared life of sense; that has been maintained so long in its range in opposition to faith's sovereignty. But while here we stand, like *Elijah,* upon Faith's Mount, we can command Invisible Bands, Chariots and Horsemen of fire that will come in to help upon faith's alarm: and so shall all Weapons of War be frustrated. Therefore fear not, you who are upon faith's ground, said the Almighty.

[2F 24:18] But the Word of His counsel thus spoke in me: Rather beware of those more close and subtle enemies that are within your own house, which will every moment make war upon those lofty aspirings and ascensions of faith. They are more dangerous enemies, who can so swiftly raise indeed up the strong forts of reason, and can display all their faith-destroying Arrows to Wound the heart and life thereof: threatening, if you still hold out, and will not again descend into the Gulf of Sense, then you must be liable to the peril of famine, nakedness, poverty, and all kind of reproach. If you will not yield to the Laws of Reason's Kingdom, such destructions must necessarily befall you. Now then for caution, said the Spirit of Life, cast up the accounts of present and future times, and in the clear eye of light, you both backward and forward may make discovery, that such arguments as these, have frightened down thousand, thousands of souls, which otherwise would have kept Faith's Ground. Therefore at this very day among the professing part of Christianity, such a Faith is only of reputation, as will not expose to loss, shame, and disgrace, but can fall in, and hold correspondence with what is agreeable to the animal body. But hearken, you who so much search after this life, consider if you will adventure up to this Hill, what shots, not only from the world below, but what will break in, as floods, from all dark centers, to bring you back to live in the warm harbor of sense and reason.

[2F 24:19] Then this Word further arose from the pure motion, saying: Therefore, now that you are diving for this Precious Thing, I would that no mistake should be upon your mind, if you would come to recover that Life that *Adam* had: which was indeed an unmixed Life of Faith, before the relapse did take hold upon him, I say, if you will fix your minds to this life, then stay, and lean your-

selves upon this faith-all sufficiency, and do not think to carry two lives in one body, that are contrary to each other. For this Spirit of Faith can only agree with what is willing to bow, and be all friendly with it, as a suitable Mate unto it. Can you, said the Spirit of Faith, walk out as *Abraham, Isaac,* and *Elias* did with me, they saw nothing before them, as to the visible but earth and air, and yet nothing mistrusted, but confided in what was not seen; who therefore were abundantly recompensed. Such as these, who have put out the eye of their sense, and have thrown away the crutches of reason, does the Spirit of Faith seek to walk with, that so they may live upon Honey out of the Rock.

# Chapter 25

## October 10, 1677
## The Lily Spirit

[2F 25:1] §.There was this morning a place presented to me like a Garden: where many sorts of flowers were, but all single plants, save one. Which grew up with Twins upon one stalk, three times two, and one more from the same root; which grew right up with its head bowing down towards the rest: it seemed to be like a tulip; the color being of a very dark murrey. The other plants grew round about it, and they were overspread with caterpillars, and slugs, which devoured and spoiled the beauty of them; which I much lamented to see. But suddenly a Shower came, and washed them all away. Yet afterward I saw them come on again, when the Shower ceased. And I marveled that the Tulip Branch was still kept free: and while I made this objection: How it should come to pass, that being in the same ground, it should be exempted? It was answered: You do not see the deep spring that lies under ground, that waters this branch continually. Then saw I waters rise, and all over it baptize, so as the dark color was changed into a green pleasant appearance to my intellectual sight: then after a little space, the spring did rise mighty high, and did it so drench, as from its greenness, it was changed into a Lily Whiteness; which was very marvelous to see such a sudden transmutation upon this branch. Oh, my Lord, signify the true meaning of this similitude, for it seems to have much in it.

## October 11, 1677
## Interpretation of the Lily Spirit*

[2F 25:2] §.This Parabolic Vision was as a Text and Doctrine given, upon which the Holy Spirit might make its comment. By the Garden was given me to understand that inward flourishing ground of the Eternal Mind, out of which a crop of pleasant plants did put forth from the Seed of the Spirit. The Eternal Sower planting Himself in the midst hereof as that Lily Branch, which grew up in its twined might and beauty to the Perfect Number Seven.

[2F 25:3] §.Now it was queried by me: *Why those Single Plants, which were Divine Qualifications of the Mind, proceeding from the Root of Life, should be under the power of these Despoilers?* I was then made to understand why those Heavenly Cogitations that would proceed forward to all Divine Virtue, were overrun by the Devouring Worms. It was therefore resolved, that it would continue still so to be, while they put forth themselves from one Weak Stalk, in the scattered confusion of a dispersed property. Now, being thus obnoxious to the intemperate motions of the Visible Element, and mixing therewith, they are subject to smitings of all kinds. And though through the help of those Distilling Showers of the Word of Life, oftentimes refreshing this Inward Ground, and cleansing it from this swarming, flying, and superfluous thoughts which the Slugs and Caterpillars did really figure out, they are freed from here. Yet upon the cessation of these Upper and Outward Showers of a visible teaching ministry, they are apt to swarm again upon the mind, to stain and envenom those plants, which do bud forth in the single and divided property. So that while the inward is thus invaded upon, no fruit can be brought to perfection; for as fast as it comes on, it is eaten off: so that the work, while standing in this posture, is always doing, yet never done, nor perfected.

[2F 25:4] And yet the soul in the meantime is in great earnestness after, and for its restoration, always striving against the stream, and tide of Profuse Imaginations: which keep back the Harvest from ripening of what has been still sowing by the Spirit. Now this might be remedied in such, who are laboring in the tillage of this inward ground, and have been found faithful. For to them this Sevenfold Cluster of Eternal Might shall arise, as by the similitude did appear in the Branch of the Twined Unity. As the voice of the Spirit did declare, that seeing such unprofitableness was by the Seed, sown so apart, a release should be had for us in this matter. For all which is of a dispersing quality, should now be drawn in, to make up that Seed Branch, in which may consist that Head Principality, that should be of all commendable force; as was seen in the figure: All growing together in unity, every Flower being coupled, for to show thereby a redoubled might and strength.

[2F 25:5] Oh, how pleasant is it to see all so suitably mated, growing up from this One Eternal Root. As First, that vigorous Spirit of Love that attracts unto itself the High Operative-Faith of God. These two, as in an Everlasting Marriage-Union, are in all Degrees of Spirituality, which never admits of separation. The Second Branch that springs from this Root is an Eternal, Still, Passive, Meek Spirit, whose Mate and Choice is the Spirit of deep Wisdom, to whom pertains the Dowry of Prophecy and Revelation. The Third Springing Branch, is such a peace as excludes all tormenting anguish, and disquieting fear, and espouses as its Eternal Mate, the pure rising joy of the Holy Ghost. Now as to that which is left to make up the Perfection of Number, is nominated to be the watchful Single Eye of Light, that all these intrinsically and essentially unites together, as in a Body of Power, that so an all-sufficiency may be in it, to transform what is so disagreeing, unto the perfect excellency of high extracted Spirituality.

[2F 25:6] Then this Word to me came: Know that the whole Mystery of God will have its finishing course in these Seven Throne Powers, as to the raising of the fallen ruins of the Adamical Man. Now from this see, that it is absolutely meet, for every Spiritual Plant to be united to its Mate; that so all may grow into a cluster of beauty and strength. And that you may be brought to the higher degrees of Transforming Glory, through the feeding, flowing spring, that circles under, where this Life Branch is fixed. If you attain to such an enrichment, as to have this plant of united force and power to grow in the Garden of your Mind, you may then be out of all fear, that any evil of sin, or the effects of it, can come in to spoil or to devour. For upon its own guard it stands, and can defend itself against all invasions. Now for this end, that you may pursue hereafter, these things are revealed. Make it your own Spiritual Business to come out of the meek, single plantation, into the strong unity of that Plurality of Spirit, which is able at pleasure to change you into a Body of Heavenly Luster; such as is meet for that work whereto you are designed. For this, O you well-disposed souls, keep an Holy Day, within the borders of a Pure Mind.

## OCTOBER 12, 1677
## THE EVERLASTING MORNING-DAY*

[2F 25:7] §.This Word visited me about break of day: Run away to the Everlasting Morning-Day, there to be hidden from the Wrath of the Lamb. Which will be certainly expressed against those who are found Naked; having only the mortal clothing for their covert, in this Great Day which is breaking forth unavoidably upon all flesh.

### October 15, 1677
### You Shall be Holy*

[2F 25:8] §.Being thus warned to pursue and make hard after that Securing State, and to keep all watchfulness over our hearts, lest the Evil Spirit should beguile us; this Word was given for further caution: Far be it from him, who in all things must be approved a man of God. Therefore he is not to be found amongst evil doers, to be a reproach in such a time as this; or to take liberty, lest a snare come upon the superiority of that life, which requires great sequestration. §.Then again this Word was with me: *And you shall be Holy unto me, for I the Lord am Holy, and have severed you from all others, that you should minister before Me, and be Mine only.*

### October 18, 1677
### The Two Golden Candlesticks

[2F 25:9] §.I saw my own figure sitting in a solemn, still, waiting posture: and there passed by a Golden Candlestick with many Branches; and in the midst thereof was the form of a Cup or Bowl, all which distinctly had Lights, like Lamps Burning from Oil: but that out of the Bowl in the midst gave a greater blaze than all the rest. Then this Word sounded: Up, up! Follow this Light before it is out of sight. Then was given into my hand another such Golden Candlestick, without any Lights in their sockets: but as soon as the Candlestick was given, I hastily followed the other into a room, which was all enlightened with the Brightness of the Glory thereof. Which I could only view, but found I could not there abide, but was ordered to wait at that Open Door, till every Branch of the Candlestick should be answerably filled with Oil; and give forth Light as the foregoing Brightness did; which was as a heaven for light. This idea or manifestation drew my mind after it: that, if possibly Light might be set up in every property accordingly.

### October 19, 1677
### The Bright Sun, and Many Stars*

[2F 25:10] §.In the night after my first sleep, there appeared unto me a Bright Sun, and many Stars were fixed in the circumference of it, that sparkled forth with a wonderful fury; so that it enlightened the earth with its reflection. And it said: Here is gathered that which fills up, and makes complete the whole Body of Light.

### October 20, 1677
### Ask and You Shall Receive*

[2F 25:11] §.This Word came unto me: Pray ever more in that faith, where each one is to be their own Advocate in the free liberty, according as it is written, *In that day ask what you will, and it shall be given you.*

### October 25, 1677
### The Key of the Government*

[2F 25:12] §.Oh you with whom is my charge, this is no Season to stop in the way. Neglect not the Day, in which the Mighty One in you may rise again; upon whose shoulder the Key of the Government is laid, to open for you the Everlasting Gate.

## October 26, 1677
## Rules for Preserving the Virgin Purity*

[2F 25:13] §.The first part of the night I spent in recollecting and calling over this whole week's transactions, which I had little satisfaction in, because it was not upon such a service, as it was meet, I should ever and always be found employed in. For whatever necessary concerns of this temporary life, that called me away from this Heavenly Calling, it became as Gall and Wormwood, and brought a heaviness upon me: So that I made my application in the deep inward sense hereof, that if possible, no more such Earthly Matters should crowd in upon us, who had so much avowed ourselves only to be the Lord's Servants, and therefore our spirits could no otherwise be but troubled, when hurried by that which was so great a setback to our Spiritual Profession, that is in imitation to our Lord Jesus in His Holy Priesthood.

### Quicken Your Pace

[2F 25:14] While I was considering the closeness of this work, I was cast into a sleep. And I was suddenly awakened by One that called and said: If you do not take good heed and quicken your pace, a Dark Mist from the Earth will rise upon you: and then you will be prevented from entering into the Third Degree, where is no eclipse. This Word I took hold of; for it came very seasonably.

[2F 25:15] Some space of time after in the same night, I went in Spirit to one that also was herein concerned with me, to give him a spiritual caution, and bemoaned with him the loss of time. And the same person, whose figure was named to me, appeared in a White Garment, sullied with Black Dust. Taking notice hereof, it was advised to put it off, and another to be put on. But it was spoken in my hearing: That will also be defiled, unless you keep in that Upper Right-Hand Way, where no Miry Waters overflow, nor do Winds blow to raise the Dust below. Upon which Word I considered that to never walk in the Valley of this World, and to keep our *Nazaritical* Life unspotted, would be a mighty victory; having such holy provocations, to be herewith overcharged, and so our minds corrupted. For we have but One Heart, which if it be chased as a Roe and Hart, upon the Barren Hills and Thorny Desert of this world: Where will the Most Holy find a Rest for Himself in us, who will not set one foot into the Door of our Minds, if we parley with Contrary Spirits, that casts into us earthly Fumes and Vapors?

[2F 25:16] Thus I was made to see the Biting of the Serpent at our heel, as we walked in the way of the earthly inhabitants. So my mind was made serious and watchful herein, lest herewith overtaken, our hearts should be invaded upon. Therefore this way of prevention was revealed to me, that we might preserve the Virgin-Purity for her True Mate, in these following rules:

[2F 25:17] §.The *first* rule I had given, was to be true to the Solemn Contract, and Espousal Vow, which we had made, namely, to be the only Bride to the Lamb.

[2F 25:18] §.S*econd:* To be found always at home in the Spirit, in a Waiting Posture, setting all things in order, minding only the entertaining of this our Betrothed Husband; sending out Burning Floods of Love, to bring Him into the close Center of the Heart.

[2F 25:19] §.*Third:* To be found in clean and White Linen, that He may be delighted with your innocence and *Nazarite* Purity. Then another sort of a Higher Degree may be put upon us, as was showed me.

[2F 25:20] §.*Fourth:* To have always that, which may be most pleasant to His taste: therefore bring forth those Choice Fruits, which the Tree of Love and Life bears. And then it was testified unto me,

that this Holy Order maintained, would give us an escape; and no trouble should be in our habitation, because the Lord *Jehovah-Shammah* will dwell in us, and will cut off all that attempts to invade.

## October 27, 1677
## The Blast of the Terrible One*

[2F 25:21] §.Upon an occasion of disturbance, by a disquieted spirit in the family, I poured out the sense thereof unto my Lord in prayer: Why such a Grieving Thorn should be our troubler? So I committed all to Him, who I believed would clear me from all unjust clamors, in truth and innocence. After which, I found a sudden Sweet Calm and Peace brought into my mind; which caused me to repose in a quiet natural rest. In the morning this Word came in for my support: Be not dismayed at the blast of the Terrible One, who has poured forth hellish fury. Be still found in longsuffering and patience, and then this shall all turn to the furtherance of that work which is decreed in Everlasting Counsel, whereby the remainder of wrath shall be restrained: though it is not taken well that such insolence is permitted over you.

[2F 25:22] §.Afterward, this Word was given also, saying: Speak to *Josedech:* to be strong, fervent and steady; and nothing fear, but be faithful to the Priestly charge and work. For then, said the Lord, I will be with him, and he shall assuredly prosper; according to the Covenant made, when he dedicated himself to be mine only, in *Nazarite* separation.

[2F 25:23] §.Then this Word visited me: Yet in a little while, there will arise out of the Everlasting Priesthood, that which shall shake all Nations in Earth, Sea, and dry Land. Set therefore your hearts hereunto with all watchfulness, and diligence.

[2F 25:24] §.As we were met together, I saw a flame pass through the room; and presently the Word spoke: All these must first be purged with fire, before they can stand with the Lamb upon the *Mount.*

## October 28, 1677
## Openings from the Center of Love and Joy*

[2F 25:25] §.This morning I felt in myself mighty openings from the pure Center of Love and joy, with some encouraging Words which passed through me. After I had prayed, the Word to me was: Go forward, for I have accepted you, and I will be known your God in the light of the Altar-flame in truth.

[2F 25:26] §.Again it was said: Appear yourself therefore in such a work, whereof you need not be ashamed; as having seen that pattern in the Glass of Wisdom; to which eternal idea keep your Internal Eye fixed: and you shall bring forth to perfection that which has been in the perspective part.

## October 29, 1677
## The Hand of the Lord

[2F 25:27] §.After my first sleep, being still somewhat drowsy, and hardly come to my awakened sense, I saw a mighty Great Hand lifted up, upon a wonderful high pole. This sight was so amazing, that though it was so high, as it seemed to touch the clouds, yet I could see it very distinct as a large Hand. When I came to consider what it should signify, the Word was thus given: This is the Lord's Hand, which shall be lifted up: And who is it that shall not see it? Much more I wait to be revealed; for it was a significant Vision, that brings along its own meaning: that so we might hereby be warned what God will appear to do in the earth.

# Chapter 26

## NOVEMBER 16, 1677
## THE MARRIAGE-BED*

[2F 26:1] §.I had this night much inward expostulation, tending to my full and perfect change into such a Spiritual Corporeity, in which the offence of sin might altogether cease. For since the Holy Teacher and Guide has been plain with me, that unless I here attain to be Born Again, so as no composition of the First Original Matter of Sin may spring; till then I can have no free access, nor be taken up into all Spousal Freedom in the Love-Joys, that are only known by such who are Redeemed from all Sin. For the Lamb the Bridegroom can take no other into the Marriage-Bed of Inflamed Love with Him, but an Immaculate Bride, all fair and serene. The Father has charged Him to bring no other into His Kingdom. Now then, said the Spirit, You see that my striving in you is to make you all commendable, that the Father Himself may Love you, and be at Perfect Reconciliation with your spirits. For this is the considerable matter, to have the whole Trinity agreeing to take up and pitch their Pavilion of Light round about you. Then expect such a change as never yet has come.

## NOVEMBER 17, 1677
## THE HAND OF THE LORD

[2F 26:2] §.In my night sleep, I was praying, and awakened myself therewith: which when I came to myself, I saw a White Hand reached out, dipped in some Precious Liquor of a Deep Red Color, and it dropped thereof on my Breast. Which presently brought forth that Word to me in the *Song of Solomon:* His fingers drop sweet smelling Myrrh; The which Pure Thing I did feel upon my internal part often, to a rising joy in myself.

[2F 26:3] §.Then this Word came to me: Now take heed of going out amongst the dead. If anything of this kind touches you, watch the time: Do not rest till a Fresh Stream of Live Blood washes all your inwards, and perfumes your separated place with this precious Myrrh. For your Lord can no more live or lie among them who smell of the dead.

## NOVEMBER 20, 1677
## THE RETURN OF THE EVERLASTING JOY*

[2F 26:4] §.The Lord looked upon us: and said He loved us, and was touched in all our afflictions and temptations, and that our tears and sorrows should not be forgotten, for all were treasured up; that so when the Sowing Time shall be passed over, salvation, and victory, and everlasting joy shall be returned to us.

## NOVEMBER 21, 1677
## THE STILL AND SILENT STATE*

[2F 26:5] §.This was the Word of the Lord that was with me: Let not the various sounds and specious gatherings of them, among whom is an uncertain sound, move you from Holy Ground, where you still wait in the Spirit's Harbor. For I have yet Secrets in an immediate way to impart. Therefore

scatter not from your Known walks, though Unknown others. So hereby I was to understand, that we were to keep in the Still and Silent State, till the Clear Trumpet of the Holy Ghost might sound through us. For nothing of this could be found in the mixed assemblies. Therefore it was shown to me, that after a while there would be a Dispersion of the Principal Shepherds and Flocks; till the Horn be filled with the Unmixed Oil of the Spirit, by a True Prophet, that must be raised up from and by the mission of the Great and Mighty Shepherd; who will then Anoint with Power each one of His Flock, that none may be found in His Pasture of a Barren Spirit; for each one shall sound forth the Mystery of their own Everlasting Redemption out of the fallen stage.

## NOVEMBER 22, 1677
## THE CRYSTAL HEART*

[2F 26:6] §.As soon as I came out of sleep, after the night's rest, this Word met me: Oh, that I might awake with Your Image perfectly: then should I behold your Face, and not be reproached because of an Ignominious Body. Whereupon I considered the weightiness of the Word, and it was opened unto me that it related to a Resurrection State after a Death-Sleep in the Grave, of the *Body of Sin*, out from which the Spirit awakens into the God-Likeness. Upon which there was presented unto me a Clear Crystal in the figure of a Heart, which hung by a Pipe, through which a Stream like Blood passed into the Heart: which was said to be the Pure Life-Seed; that conveys itself from the Fountain-Heart of the Godhead. As it is the production of a Birth answerable to the very Heart of God, which would be the True and Original Matter of a Divine Nature: in which only the Life of God should move, as it did in the person of our Lord Jesus; Whose Heart was fed from the Heart of His Father, and so ours from His, when so Purely Generated as His, from the Seed, or Incorporating Power of the Deity. For it was made evident to me, that the New Birth-Heart conceived in us, must be from the Root of the same Holy and Unmixed Matter, and answerably: in order to a Full Redeeming from the Old Polluted Heart, out from which are the issues of Death, which is said to be the Heart of *Stone.*

### Three Hearts in Man

[2F 26:7] Now it was shown me that fallen man carried about him Three Hearts: *First*, the Heart of a Beast, as it may be said of *Nebuchadnezzar*, he had a Bestial Heart; *Second*, the Heart of a Man, which comes up to sensibility and to rationality; *Third*, a Heart in which, as to the Outward Birth, remains somewhat of an Eternal Essence, as a Spark of Light, which *Adam* had in *Paradise:* and this we call Man's *Eternal Heart.* And this in the highest improvement, is in much imperfection and instability: sometimes in a raised life towards God, then sinking down as a stone again into the Earth, according to the Outward Constellations, that mutually concur in the Good and Evil; The effects whereof, we have sensibly felt, by an Inward Strife and War, through the Divided Property of the Soul, which moves sometimes from the Heavenly Center towards its Primitive Being before the Fall. So as in this contest, without conquest over the earthly part, millions of souls have passed away out of the body.

### Another Heart

[2F 26:8] And fearing least it should be so with us, Another Heart is shown unto us. For none of these can bring us near unto God. And therefore remove, and give them up, and pray vehemently that we may see this Old Stony Heart fail within us, and then such a New Heart, to which is annexed a Pure Burning Stream, which becomes a Quickening Spirit; Which will make essentially the Great Alteration, so as we shall find ourselves New-Born Perfect Creatures. For it is of that High Deified Composition of Purity, as it forces all Polluted Matter of Contrariety from it to fly. It is such a Pure

Thing, as it will be contracted into itself, and live alone in an absolute dominion. There is no allowance given for any of those fore mentioned Hearts with it to commix, no more than Clay or Iron with Gold. The Spirit of this Heart is most subtle, penetrating, bubbling, and still flying upward above all low things. As its Birth is from the Heart of the Deity, so there again it will live.

[2F 26:9] Truly, at the consideration that there is such a Heart to be given, my Spirit is in an astonishment. Therefore I call all you Throne-Angels and Seraphims, to be with me in wonderment, that such a Heart shall come in any one to be fixed substantially. For what less will this come to, but the making good of that saying of the *Lycaonians,* who said to *Paul, the god's are come down in the likeness of men.* For as the Heart is, so is the man, a Godlike Heart overturns the whole course of Nature, and changes all into Another Scheme, answerable to the first moving cause: which sends forth Life and Heat into all parts, as naturally, so Spiritually, for the existence of the Divine Nature.

### The True Mystical Death

[2F 26:10] And further it was given me to know, that it was a Renewed Act of Creation: a drop let fallen from the Heart-Blood of God, for life enkindling into such in whom the Virgin Crystal Mold is formed, that here for has been making way in preparation through many washings and cleansings, and heart-relinquishings. For this Word came closely unto me from the Lord, and home to me: *Suffer and endure you must, who are looking for the Gift of this New Heart, such a breaking up of the Old, as a dying man when his heart-strings are loosening.* This is the true Mystical Death: this is to be a dead man indeed; which many have sought, but could never find, because they did not Strike at the Heart-Root. For so long as there is life remaining, it will send forth its sin-reviving effects. For what if you should cut off this and that member, yet life may be at heart still; and then what avails hewings and hackings, and suppressing; the Root of the Evil Life being still there? The work is never done, because the Life of Sin is still sending forth one bitter fume or other: to pain, and afflict, what would be at ease and rest.

[2F 26:11] Now what remedy can for this be considered, said the Holy One, but the plucking up, and breaking the very Heart-Strings, that its life may be a Sacrifice to Divine Justice? For so it must be both a Passive and an Active Offering: for the Sin that has been committed in the Body of the Flesh. Which Mystery has not been understood: but know it for an Everlasting Truth. Let not the Sentence of this Death be grievous, because it will certainly usher in somewhat, that will be equivalent to the Deep Springing Heart of the Deity; out of which issues of life, love, joy, and peace will flow. Then you shall know no more strife, sorrow, or pain; because the Root of all this is by Death taken away. Therefore repent not that you are entering into the very way: fear not to fail the Old Heart melting, for when that fails, Another Heart and Spirit will be given. Which is of that strength, courage, and perfection, as that you shall be spirited for the great and primary business, and for the work of trust for God and the Lamb. So all may see what the effect of this New Heart will visibly produce in you.

## NOVEMBER 23, 1677
## ROLLING AWAY OF THE OLD STONY HEART*

:[2F 26:12] §.This morning I was in a very deep and secret consultation with the Holy Inspiring Word concerning this great change. For this is but yet known in us, how that every motion and thought springs from the Mixed Heart. But now great searching thoughts were how we, if possible, by any means might attain to this Perfect Heart, which was all clean within. For it was made equivalent that hereby would be the whole overturning of the Old Creation; making way for the New in

each one, in working a through demolishment. For which this Word of advice was given: Let it not seem incredible to you that the Old Heart shall fall away, though it is as your Life-Essence: where that Law is engraved which has brought all into perdition; at the release of which a wonder working Heart shall be planted in its place in great renown. Therefore watch daily. Believe assuredly that this Covenant will be made good, as you have faith to believe that the Old Stony Heart shall be rolled away; which only has kept and would still prevent this Heart rising far: where New Laws, according to the new frame of things, shall be understood by such a Chosen Priesthood, as all of Spirit shall be compacted: and by God's own Heart-Strings of Love, stand everlastingly together tied, as Christ's Perfect Spouse and Bride. Now then hoist up your Sails of Faith, and keep upon the broad waters of Love's deep, that spring from the silent desert, till all full treasures of joys and peace shall meet upon you.

## NOVEMBER 24, 1677
## THE MUNITION-ROCK*

[2F 26:13] §.This morning, after much sweet communion in a contemplative way with Him who is invisible, I saw of a sudden a Rock, fashioned like an Arch, whereinto a way was made to pass, and it was pretty spacious. At the first it seemed to be somewhat dark, which made me fear to enter in. But presently a Table was there, upon which was a blazing light; and it then became all shining and exceeding lustrous to invite into it. But about the light, there appeared a company of Dark Colored Flies, which fluttered so about it, as that they would have obscured the light: but as they came up to it, they were consumed by it. So considering these divine ideas, the Word came, saying, Enter in, you whom the Sacred Vow of Separation is upon. For here is a Munition-Rock for your security. Oh, that here you may be hid, and hope, and quietly wait for the Birth of the pure and perfect Heart, in which you shall see the Face of God, whose voice may be frequently heard in this Secret Place. Therefore love here to abide. For here is the heavenly stillness.

## NOVEMBER 26, 1677
## THE POOL OF BURNING OIL*

[2F 26:14] §.The whole employ and exercise of my mind was now to have the Old Heart transmitted into a New One, according as it is meet: because therefrom the perfect New Creature is formed with all new and fresh organical senses and affections, proper for communion with the highest purity and goodness. As it was shown me that the Heart and Spirit that moves and acts the Old Creature is capable to comprehend nothing higher, than what lies within the circumference of its own sphere and low birth of life, that only reaches to things that are seen, and knowable by the highest graduated life of reason, which is altogether to seek in matters Celestial and Eternal. Now that we might come to know the invisible, only wise and Everlasting God our Father, it must be through the medium of such a Spirit, as may be the very conceptive part of the New Heart. From which springs a clear light that gives understanding in the Mystery of God, and in what relates to the Kingdom of our Lord Jesus: Which is hereby to be revealed only as this pure Spirit comprehends its own original, from where it proceeds infinitely, and so sounds, and finds infinite things contained in the Immense Being; by virtue of a New Covenant tie, which the Spirit of a New and Perfect Heart is forever under the obligation of a Love Constraining Law, from which there may be no departing.

### The Pool of Balsaming Blood

[2F 26:15] But while upon these myrrh-droppings my soul was feeding; this Word for confirmation was added: What if this may become such a time of Love, as by passing by to look upon you, I shall swear unto you and not repent, that I your God will be unchangeable: and will enter into such a Covenant, as you may henceforth become mine. Then shall I know what to do for your further glory and excellency; For in that you will be commendable to your God, whose eye only can take pleasure therein. Then was presented a transient sight, to wit, a Pool, wherein I was bid constantly to wash and bath, for the Word signified, that such *Virtue was herein, as it would make white the very blackamoor's skin, and cleanse away every Leopard's* Spot. For it is a bath of Burning Oil, that will the First Birth of the Earthly Heart to purpose try, and melt away; that so all pure Spirit of Life may spring, and a body of a shining skin, as a Cherub-covering be given. For it was revealed to me, that this should be done unto us, as we were become the Lord's by league and covenant; from which it stood upon the honor of the Lamb, and of His Kingdom, for us to be found all clear and perfect, through this Pool of Balsaming Blood, that thoroughly baptizes all, who are in the true membership of His Body.

## November 28, 1677
## The Nuptial Dish

[2F 26:16] §.A holy and pure communion and freedom being maintained in a Spiritual Way between the Spirit of the Bridegroom, and the Spirit that is preparing to be the Bride of the Lamb; thus it was manifested by this Similitude: Presenting before my in-seeing eye, a Golden Charger, and in it somewhat of a Spirit of an extracted virtual matter, upon which fell a Sparkling Star, as from the Invisible Orb, and caused the Liquor in the Charger to flame up. And I heard presently the Word say, Come my Spouse, and draw near: for here is provided Heavenly Cheer. Behold the Lord the Spirit is presented here in a Lordly Dish, wherein the True Body of your Jesus is both *Tasteable* and *Discernible*. Whoever are able to drink this in, it will make them Spirits, as all Burning Flames. Upon which great things were further opened in the Magia Line, which, could I have totally acquitted all those motions that concur to sense-awakening, I might have given an account of an infinite space, into which my Spirit was launching, but was driven back by some Stirring Essence, that would not let my Spirit pass Naked and Pure. But this Word came: Though you cannot pass now, yet you shall, after you have eaten of this Lordly Dish, which will turn Nature into Spirit. Then you may fly as an Eagle, into the Secret Ranges of all Eternal heights and depths; and see, and know what lies beyond the Starry Sky.

## November 30, 1677
## The Way of the East

[2F 26:17] §.This divine speculation begat a mighty magical drawing, into those infinite heights and depths, which but just opened upon me, but then shut up. But my Spirit made again a fresh onset, if by any means I might pass into that profound Light Orb, according to the nature of a spirit. For an echo cried in me from that Sphere: That the Holy Trinity was there in the highest dimensions of glory; which was a sufficient motive to attract my Spirit out of this vile corporeity, from which I found much resistance. For I perfectly felt somewhat therefrom arise, that bound my spirit. I was in great struggle for some hours, for the Spirit wrestled for a full liberty. Then came this Word: By all these encounters the way will be made; only keep your course strait towards the Everlasting Deep Gate, according as you shall feel the Wind of the Spirit driving thereto, and so wait with it to move. Oh, to have a Spirit in a Body of Flesh, to be as free as a bird; which can, when it will, fly from his nest!

### The Law of Degenerated Nature

[2F 26:18] This was to me a new revealed thing, by which great discoveries may be made in the Invisible Region, who have been altogether strangers to what is transacted there, because the sensitive soul claims such a Marriage Union with the Spirit, that neither what is present nor what is to come must sever them. This is the Law of Degenerated Nature, which lawfully may be broken. For the spirit of the soul is not forever to be confined to the soulish depravity, when once it comes to know and understand that it is a pure grain, let fall from the Deity into the soulish property. Then it will not suffer itself to be imprisoned as under a mountain-weight. No sooner does it spring and rise above the ground as an ear of corn which grows ripe, but a separation from the earthly part or ground may be made by the mighty Lord of the Harvest, who will come to reap where He has sown pure Spirit; and that in the very time of this exterior elementary being, Christ's last day of Resurrection and Ascension shall appear through the might of this precious grain of the Deity (by which I mean the Eternal Spirit of the Inward Man, which is a spark descended from the Deity, and it differs from the Eternal Seed of Christ's Deity, which is incorporated with this for its Resurrection and Ascension sake.)

### The Spark of Eternity

[2F 26:19] This Spark of Eternity, the Spirit of the Eternal Soul belonging to the Inward Man, will free itself from all and every corporeal tie: For no terrestrial image, though accomplished with all external righteousness, can ever attract this superior Spirit to be in a Conjugal Union, because it is too much below. Therefore it now seeks release from it, as being ashamed of all and every circumstance concurring to the outward life, which would hold it so fast. But Wisdom and Counsel is come from Him, who will be Salvation to the ends of our earth. His Spirit has called us from the other, to an Eternal Conjunction, with that wherewith it might most suitably agree; so as to raise and heighten the Spirit to such a high degree of sublime purity, as that it might pass as swift as a thought into the deep space, where the Infinite Globe of Eternity might come to be conspicuous with the Glorious Trinity, and with all those Innumerable Spirits, who encompass the Throne-Majesty. Such visions of glory, Spirits have been carried into, while in the body, and so it shall come to be again, and that more frequently and durably.

### The Dark Gulf Fume

[2F 26:20] For upon an earnest inquiry hereunto, it was revealed unto me by this Word: *The way of the east should be prepared, and the Gate thereof should stand open, to such as could drink of the Brook in the way.* And it was shown by an idea also, that as yet there was a Dark Gulf Fume, from which rose a thick smoke; so that at present none could see their way, till the Son of the Everlasting Morning wonderfully incorporates with our spirits, to dissipate all of this darkness, through which force of Spiritual Might, we may often come up to the Ancient of Days, and draw near, and make record of what we apparently hear from Him. For the Spirit affirms, that sound Truth, Wisdom, and Knowledge must therefore be let into our understandings, and it will be much to our satisfaction, when we shall hear and see what is without and beyond this Gulf of Sense and Reason, which have kept out of the Lamb's fixed Kingdom.

### Enoch's Translation

[2F 26:21] And what will these storms be, but the Rushing Powers coming down through the Salvation-Horn, which will be blown from God's mountain-habitation. The sound of which is already heard, to hasten for preparation, to the *Enoch's* translation: that we may abstractly in Spirit, and through the whirling strong Breath may be lifted up, where our King and Lawgiver may deliver His

mind to us, as Face to Face: that we may come to know in certainty all those infinite and weighty councils, which have long been in great concealment, so as they may run in as a flash of lightning. To which end, the Star which I saw fall into the Golden Charger does predict, the high and mutual conjunction between the body and the Head-Throne-Prince. The vessel being all of pure Refined Gold, and Spiritual Matter infused therein together, what must this make but a Lordly Dish, for each one to feed upon.

### The Rose of Sharon

[2F 26:22] This Star was to be denominated the *Rose of Sharon*, that to the Spirit would give a pleasant tincture, to make it both white and ruddy. Herein is the Mystery of all Mysteries, according as it was revealed unto me, through the virtue of this wonderful commission. This Rosy-Star, feeding itself from the matter, which is so purely extracted, as a Lamp feeds upon Oil, and so both concurring, makes a burning shining light, a Flame ascending might. When this great and marvelous thing shall come to be witnessed by anyone, there will be no matter of doubt that the Gate of the East must be found, at which we may freely to in and out as Princes: having right to follow the Lamb, and to Eat and Drink with Him in this Lordly Dish. We shall then, as Friends, find entrance, where the Tent of His Glory is pitched, to see, hear, and taste, what has been laid up in store for us from the foundation of the world.

# Chapter 27

## DECEMBER 1, 1677
## A CALL TO THE HOLY TABERNACLE*

[2F 27:1] §.Strong instigations and travail in Spirit still attending me, for the Rising of the Star of Glory in eminency, according to all that Prophetical Ministration, under which line we are cast, and find succor thereby, through the fresh feeding Word of Life; which within the First Watch of the night thus spoke, saying, The Most High and Holy One seeks and calls up such to dwell with Him in His Holy Tabernacle, who have rejected and turned their backs upon the Seat of the fine-trimmed *Babylonish* Beast, and will touch nothing therewith, because it is under the Curse: against which you are to be ever zealous.

## DECEMBER 2, 1677
## THE NEW TONGUE*

[2F 27:2] §.I saw one clothed in fine White Linen, and he had in his hand a Sensor, and there were live Fire-Coals, which were scattered abroad. And it was said that upon whosoever they did light, they should be inspired with a New tongue to declare great things.

## DECEMBER 3, 1677
## THE GREAT AND MIGHTY POTENTATE*

[2F 27:3] §.This Word ministered was, Watch and keep the covering of the Spirit close girt about you, against all offences that may come. Abide still and quiet, where the Anointed Shield is given for your defense, under the Banner of which abide close and hidden. Be all pleasing and pliable to your Internal Guide, who is working to bring you into high and dear friendship with the Great and Almighty Potentate, to whom all worlds must give obeisance. Therefore only care and mind Him, who is so True and Faithful, as to raise and bring you into such love and favor, that the God of Light may not walk as in a Cloud of Darkness, but show Himself manifest to your joy in peculiarity.

## DECEMBER 4, 1677
## THE VIRGIN GARMENT*

[2F 27:4] §.This Word did spring in me, saying, Do you well consider what your Virgin Garment must be made of, that no moth may eat any hole in it? For if anything of the Earthly Fleece should be interwoven, it would damage the whole part; Therefore let your Lord know you in all of one sort of Fine Linen, upon which no moth can come to eat.

[2F 27:5] §.Then it was further given by way of command, saying, If you resolve to follow the Lamb up to all Perfect Degrees, then observe this as a New Commandment: Take yourself off from all old traditional conformity, which is after the manner of men who are after the flesh. From such the Spirit calls to withdraw, and to walk with Him after Another Way, according as Divine Precepts shall be revealed.

## DECEMBER 6, 1677
## THE ENTRANCE OF CALEB AND JOSHUA INTO THE LAND OF BEULAH

[2F 27:6] §.As we were in the Spirit of supplication attending together, a transient view of full Ripe Sheaves was presented, as a testimony, that we should bring of the First Ripe Fruits, as a pure offering to the Lord, according to what has in the days of our sorrow, heaviness, and temptation been purely sown in the Spirit. But it was also shown me, that this should not be accomplished, till we had fulfilled our set-time in the Wilderness: For this is an ordinance that was given by God to *Moses*, while *Israel* was yet in the Wilderness, before they came into the Good Land. This instruction was for time to come, saying, Now behold, the Firstfruits of the Land, which you have reaped, you shall offer unto the Lord your God. So accordingly the First Ripe Fruits of the Spirit must be wholly dedicated and brought into the store-house of the Lord; rejoicing and making everlasting melody in the Courts of Holiness, as the joy of harvest. Oh! This is the desirable day, but who has it seen? Because they have all died short, before entering into the Good and Fruitful Land, one generation passing away after another, as we have seen it.

### Joshua and Caleb

[2F 27:7] But is it decreed eternally thus to be? No, assuredly no. There is a Generation to come, that shall not only sow but reap, and pay their tithe-offerings to the great *Melchizedek* King. There is a *Caleb* and *Joshua*, who will outlive all the Spirits of Unbelief; who have been Faithful Spies to search and find out the virtue and glory of Mount Sion's Land. Whereupon the Spirit did take up the history, and did it mysteriously, to [which] our state at present very closely apply. As thus, that *Joshua* and *Caleb* signified the unity of the Spirit concurring in a strong faith, the spirits of our minds agreeing mutually with the Spirit of Jesus, and so both do agree to pass and see the goodly spaces of Eternity, whether all things be so, as has been reported of, concerning the matters of Christ's Kingdom. To which we are annexed Heirs, and therefore concerned to take our flight there, to view all within the New *Canaan.* For our Lord did know, that a sight beforehand of this Inheritance would greatly satisfy: as it was with the Queen of *Sheba*, who gratified both her eye and ear, in the state of *Solomon's* Kingdom.

### The Anchor of Hope

[2F 27:8] Now then, may we not, in the Spirit of Faith, and rising power of Christ's Spirit, come to have such a pass over *Jordan's* flowing river? Hereupon it is cleared up to me, that it is most lawful and expedient to take such a heave or flight in the Spirit. For which end, in obedience to the Counselling Word, which to me was dropped in; let us then be, as a goodly ship, who would launch into the ocean deep, and would swim upon the Broad Waters, all tackled and trimmed, and pitched within; that no place may be found for bleaking, and our pure and white sails stretched out, all in a readiness, lying at the very haven upon the Anchor of Hope; waiting to see when the Gusts and Breath of the Holy Ghost will turn our ship about, and blow all south, that we may suddenly be cast upon the Rock of Pearls and Precious Stones in that Land *Beulah*, that is so little known.

### Our Sure Pilot

[2F 27:9] But who now must be our sure Pilot, but He that has already there been, even that Bright Star that can steer through fire, water, and air, having Himself broken through all these, and so will do no less for us, if we shall be found in such a ready posture as has here been described. Now let us give all place to this *Joshua*-Spirit in our bark, who will make a remove for us out of the Wilderness.

He does but wait for the Mighty Birth to be brought forth, that so we may pass away jointly and altogether. It was further also denoted to me, that all the murmuring and unbelieving spirits should be wasted away in the Wilderness, who have murmured through fear and distrust: for these can have no share with us, whether they be with or without us. All are excluded; none but *Joshua* and *Caleb* will enter in with us to view, and will have possession with us in the Land *Beulah.*

## DECEMBER 7, 1677
## THE CESSATION AND THE RETURN OF MIRACLES

[2F 27:10] §.A very curious question did stir in my Spirit, why such a concealment of the heavenly things was in this time of our Lord's mediating Priesthood? And why no more visible effects were produced upon His members on Earth, as to the Resurrection-Day. For since the Apostle's Age, little has been wrought in any miraculous way, further than by Internal Light, and Spiritual Renewings, and the Love of God shed abroad with the Blood of Sprinkling: which is the highest degree, that yet any have arrived unto. But all this did not appear to me to be that which the Perfect Restoration must further make out; nay, what the Apostles saw and heard in their time, who had the first breathings from Christ, after His Ascension. Yet all then and since have been exceeding short of what is in reserve to be revealed. As I do know this from a sure Word of intimation, and so my expectation has been greatened, and the pool of my mind stirred and troubled, and somewhat as from a Central Fire boiling up to clarify that, and so the gross thick and dim eye might be single, and piercing to see if possibly into its own original Body of Light. That so hereby a clear aspect might be of what has been acting and working in order to the consummation of another more Pure and Perfect Creation.

### A Half Hour of Silence

[2F 27:11] Thus being upon an internal search into matters of this high nature, this Word was brought into me, saying: Why are you troubled that such long respite has been, as to the manifestation of the absolute Reign of the Lamb, that was slain because His might has not been shown, nor His power wrought, nor His wonders done in the earth? Yet now look for a greater overturn than ever, through the whole fallen creation. This long cessation shall not nullify it, for this Kingdom will have its revealing day: for the Golden Sand of the half hour’s silence is running out apace, which must be first expired out in Heaven. It was then given me to understand, that this half hour of silence has been, ever since the Holy Ghost appeared in Cloven Tongues of Fire, upon those who in a Travailing Birth, did here wait for it upon the Lord's Promise. For since that time, little news has been heard from Heaven, only the beloved *John* had the last, great, and signal Revelation from Jesus. Since then only such a ministration has been, which has taken up their testimonies in a still and private way, opening the mind of the Spirit, in the doctrine of the Old and New Testament. But for a new and fresh Word, that may be said to come immediately from the Lord, which has not been before, truly it may be said, as it was in *Samuel*’s time, that the Word of the Lord is *precious in this day.*

### True and Anointed Prophets

[2F 27:12] We may travel from east to west, from nation to nation, and scarce find a True *Seer*, with whom is the Express Word of the Holy Ones. There may be some Hidden Ones, under the stuff of this principle, who will not be known till the Lord calls them out, to unfold boldly His mind. For this is an Age that can as little bear, as any formerly, such truths as will shake their whole righteous foundation, as it may be so termed, and others whose lives and loves are in that which must also be laid waste in the common destruction, which is coming upon all visible things. Therefore there is now more need for True and Anointed Prophets to inquire how things are going in the Invisible

Kingdom. For all the platform is first laid there, how things in this external state will be. Therefore it is needful that some must be here truly prepared for it, and should never be off their Watch-Tower, but be listening continually. For it was said, upon the inquiry of a Spirit, that the half time of silence was now upon breaking up, and mighty powers would begin to work. Therefore let the regardful understand the present motions of the Heavens. Though our Lord Jesus is shut up from all mortal view, yet the effect of those invisible workings may be known in our low Heavens, and may be felt by such, whose hearts are bent, and full stretched out to the Heart of a Glorified Jesus. These will attract down light, and so the Lower Heavens may so contact with the Upper, as to become all privy to the great affairs, counsels, and designs, which are stirring within the Globe of Eternity.

### The Great Gift

[2F 27:13] §.But the query is: *By what way or means shall anyone come to be so in-seeing, that yet have upon them the thick film of mortal sense?* §.*Answer:* There is no other medicine here prescribed for it, but to wash often in those Clear and Pure Waters, which run from the Crystal Throne into One Pool; this doing day by day, minding when those Crystal Springs bubble highest, the strong force of which, washes off the Rough Scales of Sense. Then shall we become all-seeing into what is both near and far off, as to the working of the Divine Mystery. This Word of Counsel was also added, that whoever did seek this Great Gift, to know the Divine Magia in its Eternal Motion, they will be taken up like *Enoch,* to walk with God from among men in an Unknown Region; where no evil wind or corrupt air may blow upon them. These great and weighty Crown-Jewels, which are reserved for the Last Age, will be conferred upon such Separated *Nazarites,* whose walks and conversations are in the *Immanuel,* where the Veil and Face of the Covering will be done away; when no need there will be of crying: *Come up, and see.* For in the very Eye of Light, we then shall comprehend, and all invisible things shall stand as naked before us. But Oh, Lamb of God, when shall your Hand of Might be stretched out, to bring these mighty things to pass for any one?

## December 8, 1677
## Dressing and Trimming*

[2F 27:14] §.This Word visited me, saying: How great is the goodness that is treasured up for those that love and long for the Mighty God and the Everlasting Savior. Dress therefore, and trim yourselves every day for your Bridegroom: who takes great pleasure when He finds you all comely and sitting at the deep Manifestation Gate. Oh, sweet Jesus, if you will open this Gate, and give us out from there your Loves, we will not remove, because of the Sweet and Pleasant Savor that issues forth from you. Oh come, with all pulling force, that as a Bright Cloud, we may be of a dissolving nature, for all Love's impressions from you: and that so we may see ourselves One with your Celestial Nature unchangeably.

## December 9, 1677
## The Overthrow of Sisera, and the Song of Deborah

[2F 27:15] §.In the night I had hard wrestling with somewhat, which had brought an overcast of gloominess upon my Heavens: which I could not well bear, but did row as against wind and tide, to get out of the danger of those floods that did violently break in. And through earnest and strong supplications, I was heard in that [which] I feared. For my Jesus did come to my aid, and in truth made all miraculously to be still within me, and charged with great authority all those troublers of my joy and peace to depart, saying: *Who is it that has anything to do here, where My Living Name*

*is engraved? Have not I chosen you for My own purpose? What then do mean these strange injections here to throng? Fly, O dark clouds, from my habitation; for I will dwell in all light with My Separated Spouse, who has covenanted within the circle of a Love-Flaming Heart, still to wait for Me her Lord.*

[2F 27:16] Accordingly, so soon as I could thereinto retire, a mighty sweet Transfusion of Light did everywhere about me meet. And this verily ushered in the whole influencing Body of the Trinity. I was never made more internally sensible of their environing, and out-spreading banner, which as in a moment was stretched out to secure me from the Waters, which the Spiritual Harlot sits upon, and that in and very near us. For the Seat of all these whirling imaginations are shown me, not only to be as an accident, now and then happening, but this Adulterous Spirit claims, and would have a fixed seat in the mind, and therein bring all her worldly Sorceries, to infect the mind, and betray it into the Gulf of Perdition. Which was prevented and kept off by the sudden and secret introducing power of the Trinity: that encompasses those who are in fear of such overflowing from these Bitter and Brackish Waters.

[2F 27:17] For this I may give, as a known experience, and write upon it *probatum est*, that we at no time are now necessarily exposed to be overcome with any evil of sin, though it lurks and beleaguers very close. For strong and mighty is now the Spirit of the Lamb, who is assigned to come in for our rescue. Therefore if we earnestly implore for the Captain of the Lord's Hosts, who is to deliver His Lambs from the Mouth of the Lion that roars for his prey upon immortal souls, they will be delivered. This has often been witnessed, that we might not cowardly fall under the hand of the Man of Sin. For this Word was given while I was in Spiritual combat: Hold out for victory, I am your Lifeguard, and you shall never perish out of My Hand. There is nothing sure more pleasing, than to see the enemy of truth and righteousness so worsted and kept under ground, that he may lift up his head no more within your tent. Where then like *Jael*, you shall be called Blessed of Women, that are so skillful, as to smite *Sisera* to the ground, never more to rise again.

[2F 27:18] There is a nail within your tent, which you shall be taught, how to use it, that so the full execution may be upon the troubler of *Israel*, by the united force of *Barak* and *Jael* together. *Barak* signifies Jesus Christ, the Prince of Strength, Valor and Might, that makes *Sisera* to fly into that Tent, where the Nail by Wisdom's Hand will surely be fastened. Then not only the *Song of Deborah*, but of the *Bride* and the Lamb will be sung: when the whole principality of *Sisera*'s Kingdom shall be thus overturned, that so nothing of his seat and throne within us may be found. This for us the Lord is now doing, and it is marvelous in our eyes. Being we are called out to be followers of the Lamb in Spiritual War, till all shall bow and fall down dead before us, that has contradicted the absolute reign of Jesus in us; let us go forth in that Mighty Jah, that is with us, who will make all Kings and Nations to tremble before us, as we shall move forward in that power.

[2F 27:19] For till now little has been done, as to a full and total conquest over those great potent Powers of Darkness that have withstood *Michael* and His followers. But this Word was given me: That though it has been so permitted, yet now the Day of the Lord's controversy for full vengeance was near, upon those secret and home-bred enemies of all righteousness. Therefore according to our present might, we should strike the Nail into the Head of the *Sisera.* And this will give such a proof of Divine Valor to our God, that we shall be spirited for more wonderful conquest: and so subdue mighty thrones and powers in wicked places, in the Spirit of Him, who is the Captain of the Lord's Host, hereby to lead captive what has captivated us. And then let us meet our *Melchizedek* King,

with all the spoil thereof, as a Trophy of Victory. Who has ready in His Hand the reward of a Diadem and Crown, which He has reserved for such Conquerors.

[2F 27:20] This is the great motive: to animate our Spirits, that so we might know it is not a light or momentary thing we fight for, but what is weighty and eternal. All which is to make us in good earnest, according to a Word, which through me did sound, saying: Put not off your Armory that is of the Spirit at all, for in that you will make all life-killing Darts to rebound back again, and no weapon thereinto can pierce. And know that in this holy war, my peace shall be your garrison. Therefore hold out, till the Kingdom is given up unto you, which has been kept away, and still will be, except the Prince of Might shall take it again in you by violence. For which cause, I am come to stir you up, that so what was designed from Everlasting, may now be positively claimed by My Spirit in you. Know it is all pleasing to your God that you should be found in such great undertakings. As your Spirit is great, and from a high degree descended, so answerably do you aspire for no less, than what you believe your Lord through conquest in possession has now obtained.

# Chapter 28

## DECEMBER 11, 1677
## THE CONFLICT OF FIRE AND WATER: THE ENCLOSED ROCK

[2F 28:1] §.A presentation was given me evidently of an Enclosed Rock, upon which floods of waters broke in, to quench a fire that sprang from there; so as this fire could not get the mastery, till a descending Mighty Flame from the Light Orb came down to keep it, and to drink up all those waters. But as wave upon wave beat in, so powerful was the Celestial Flame, that nothing more of the floods were seen. And there distinctly appeared a figure and form of a light Flaming Body, that descended and upward again ascended to a heavenly firmament, where it was said, Now all is swallowed up in victory.

## DECEMBER 12, 1677
## INTERPRETATION OF THE ENCLOSED ROCK*

[2F 28:2] §.This manifestation was very suitably presented to my inward mind, which was drawn up into a deep and serious consideration, how long it might be, to the full conquest and victory over the Original Spring of Sin, with all the evil consequences that thereupon have fallen out. While my Spirit was herein much exercised, this came before me, and brought a message with it for our comfort and support, who are enclosed in Faith's Rock, which in particular applied, and made out to us that the Vision did plainly speak to us; Who though gathered into this Rocky Place, said the Revealing Word, yet see you are exempted from the violation of these Tumultuous Waves, which at Times and Seasons may break in upon My Precious Ones. As in Him, on whom no matter of Sin could be found, yet here temptations did sometimes abound, who was still found in the Rock of the Deity: and thereupon told His disciples, that because they had continued with Him in His Temptations, therefore He would give them a Kingdom, because they suffered, and were One with Him in all Temptations, not to fall under them, but to get power over them: that this gave title unto the Thrones there mentioned.

### Two Contrary Elements

[2F 28:3] Now from this it was further opened unto me, that the Fire which first sprang out, that was so often damped by the Floods, and quenched by being too weak to encounter them, was shown me to be somewhat that remained of a Pure and Divine Essence, that would still live in Nature, so as to refine it, and reduce it into what might make it like to God again. But being so strongly beat upon by the gathering together of all waters, which encompasses as a full sea, tide upon tide still breaking in upon this Fire-Root, out of which also would spring the fiery Branches of Faith, that would transplant the soul into a far higher kind of living. All which is opposed by the inundation of many waters, in which the Great Leviathan moves, which also are the Seat of the Beast, that makes War together against that Holy Seed, yet remaining within the Rock of a Heavenly Humanity. So that it is in great danger to be often extinguished, for here is two Contrary Elements, the one in strife against the other, the boisterous waters of the senses awakened from the Tempting Region of these various things, which so well suite with Fallen Nature, that they may well be too hard for that Little Spark, that strives to rise, but has been beaten down, as we in ourselves have witnessed.

### The Fiery Breath

[2F 28:4] Whereupon we may expect a stronger force will come unto our help, seeing such a strong resistance is made in order to the stifling of that Breathing Life, which has struggled to live in dominion, and to prevail over all, but thus far yet found insufficient. Upon which this Word of Counsel was given from the Holy Breath: that we should so powerfully pray in the Spirit of *Elias,* as to open the pure Fire-Element; that the Holy Ghost might form out a Fiery Breath, to consume and drink up every Flood. For against this strong and mighty devouring Flame, what waters can stand before it? Now wait again to see the same victory. For God will descend in Everlasting Flames, and the Bush of Humanity will all certainly be enlightened with His Glory. The time of it is said to be nigh, when as the Child of the Burning Element will quench all waters, and by his flaming might, will pass into the Heavens, and rend all mountains of flesh, and will dry up all seas before him.

[2F 28:5] Who now shall have faith in their earth for these things? To what a Seraphic State may it bring them up unto? Therefore let us improve every such discovery, and extend our faith to the great augmenter of our weak flame, that if possible, such an increase of Celestial Flame may make with us, as to dry up all that has encompassed our Rock. It may now be a time and season, when that such a Bright Flaming Body may be of stead unto us, which can at pleasure ascend, and secure frail corporeity. It may be well worth inquiring after the excellent properties of such a Divine Creature, which moves under the Cherub's Wing, where it can pass to and fro unseen. Oh let us further dive into this Magia, for great advantage may be made for us, to raise out here such a defense, as may set us above all fear of mortality, in a day when perils and great dangers are threatened, as an Overflowing Scourge, to break in upon the world.

[2F 28:6] It is time for us to know where to hide, where no Destroyer may find us. Which only must be within the flashing screen of the Holy Deity or Trinity, where we may walk in all safety, though the whole earth be laid in desolation. Oh, Mighty Shield of Faith, bear us up upon your Wing. Let your Word (Oh Jesus) which said, *Come to me,* be sufficient to make us tread upon the sea; keeping off every boisterous wave, that would make us doubt. Now then, upon the Broad Rivers, Oh Mighty God, let us come to you, and be afraid of no flesh that would hurt or oppress. Let yours, who are environed with the Spirit's might, make that only their anchor-hold evermore.

## December 13, 1677
## The Engrafted Word*

[2F 28:6] §.Wait, and expect the Word that was made flesh, to fully embody in Spirit, that so an Engrafted Word may come to spring in you, to create new things, and to command all old to depart away. All this the Word-God must do: that is after a creating manner.

## December 14, 1677
## The Jasper Circle

[2F 28:7] §.This morning there was brought to my internal sight, a ring or Circle, which was like a Jasper-Stone for light, and sparkling glory: and within the ring or circle, a Face of great splendor and majesty did show itself as in the Twinkling of an Eye, and withdrew again: But this Word followed, This is the Door, that has neither Beginning or Ending, through which you must enter. Consider now, and consult with what manner of body it must be, for nothing of a corruptible form can ever pass here.

## DECEMBER 16, 1677
## ATTENDING THE HOLY ALTAR*

[2F 28:8] §.As we were waiting together, this Word came: The Lord Himself is come forth to serve you with the Bread and Wine, as the great High-Priest to communicate, and His Body to break, which accordingly was experienced. Therefore it is good, at the Altar still to attend, that so the Holy Breath may there Kindle the Pure Flame, through which may open His precious Name.

## DECEMBER 18, 1677
## INTERPRETATION OF THE FORMER VISION

[2F 28:9] §.In the night my Spirit was carried inward, taking in several ideas of heavenly things into my mind, pressing hard to pass into the Circle-Door of Life. But a sweet still Voice echoed in me, saying: That Pure Thing only, which through this Circle-Eye of Eternity did come down into Nature, can be the Door of entrance again, as it circles in its Blood-Life, and thereby raise up itself, and quicken itself into such a Spirituality, as you need to ask no leave to enter back to your own proper place, from where your immortal part proceeded. For now the Eye that is fixed in you, will be both your Guide and Entrance hereinto, if in union you will ever more with it keep, and concur with it. Then it shall carry and lodge you in the Bosom-Circle of Eternity, as in a Fiery Chariot.

[2F 28:10] The Four Wheels upon which this Chariot moves are faith, hope, joy and peace. These will bear away the Lily Branch, to be planted where it may green and never fade, because the River of Life runs there ever more. Oh, when shall we be severed by this Chariot; who would see it gladly, that we may conclude your heart, dear Jesus, is towards us, and that you will live no longer without us? For seeing none can enter into this Circle-Eye, but in this Flaming Chariot, that moves upon Four Wheels. Let not the Principal Agent be wanting, but that all may concur together in us by that ghostly might, that may give a sudden flight, to see that all satisfying face, which will make us feel everlasting pleasure. And that no mortal things shall sever us from you, or come anymore as a Veil between the Spouse and her Everlasting King, to hide the entering Door of life.

## DECEMBER 20, 1677
## THE GOLDEN TREE OF BEULAH

[2F 28:11] §.Great eagerness of soul was renewed, for the passing in through the Needle-Eye of the glorified humanity. The zeal and love wonderfully concurred, so as to devour and eat up all those strong reasonings of contradiction, that otherwise would be working in the mind; From which being in a good degree cleared, through the Mystery of Faith, working by the Spirit's operation, great calmness of mind was known. In which time the Circle-Eye opened again, encompassing me round with waving White Clouds. And one descended and passed through the Bright Circle, as an Arrow for swiftness, in the figure of a Clear Body, with a Branch in his Hand: the Leaves whereof were shining as Gold, the Fruits were as a Cluster, were in variety of fruits were growing together. It was reached out, and a Voice spoke after the manner of a spirit, saying: This is Fruit from the Tree of Life, that is now planted in the Land of *Beulah.* Eat hereof and give forth, and be blessed in it forever. Presently I felt sensibly a little strengthening Virtue come in, which I would have conveyed to another after a Magical and Spiritual way, that was at a distance. While I was in thoughtfulness hereupon, the same person was presented to me, as if he had already hereof partaken. For there was strengthening meat given into his hand, wherewithal I saw him feed a bird, that flew gaping to him, being all craving and hungry, chirping still as it was fed at his hand.

## DECEMBER 21, 1677
## TRANSMUTING FRUIT*

[2F 28:12] §.After all which, I was to attend the effects of every such presentation. This morning I found my mind wholly disposed for introversion. Upon which the Vision was more opened unto me. For the Spirit did talk with me, telling me that this was a manifestation to show the care, love, and friendship of our Mighty Throne-Prince, who does as truly convey the Transmuting Fruit invisibly from Himself as the Tree of Life. That so the introduced Birth of Spirit might grow and increase, it being its own natural nourishment, without which it cannot live, till it come up to a strong man's degree; for that which is born of God feeds only upon what may transform into a god-like being; which is the Lord Christ's office and business to heighten up to that, that so there might not be any loss sustained, by the fall of the First *Adam*, in those who by this Living Word are quickened again unto life.

[2F 28:13] For it was opened unto me, that none could be capable of this high kind of feeding, but those in whom Christ was Spiritually formed. For this was all spicy, and sacred virtual power, to bring forth such Celestial New Creatures, as may ascend up with the same swiftness, as that Seraphim which did come down. For it was said to such who are changed all Spiritual, that inviting Word does stand forever good; whosoever will, to them the Door stands open to come themselves, and take of the Tree of Life most freely. And they will have the honor to bring down, and give forth heavenly tastes, and from their Divine Bodies will go forth the Healing Virtue: as it was opened to me, that these Golden Leaves had in them the Balsamic Cure, to restore to a perfect Divine Body, wherefrom all sovereign power should proceed immaculately, according to that high state, which our Lord is now in, in the Body of Glory.

[2F 28:14] Therefore this counsel and Word of comfort was given: That we should here cast the Anchor of Hope, for the passing through every Door of our own senses, till we had got beyond the Veil of Flesh, into the Circle-Body of the Holy Ghost, which is appointed for our present mansion and dwelling; where no more working source shall open to disturb our peace and joy. Our life sustainment shall be effected, by the Holy Seraphim day by day, till the half time shall fully be expired. Then it is given me to see, and to believe, that guarded along we shall be out of the Wilderness, by this Angel of God's Presence, who has promised He will not leave us, but see us safe within the Everlasting Gate.

[2F 28:15] §.This only is the charge that is left us to observe at present: That we keep the Inward Court of our minds from all polluted things, and as hollowed vessels, to take in what is sent in from God's own table, as a daily portion. He will never fail to give what shall Seal us for the day of this full Redeeming Power. Therefore upon this Promise we are to hope and quietly wait; for He will come with the shout of a King to the Pure and Virgin-Spirit, wherein Love and Faith have looked for Him. Therefore be not weary, nor faint in your minds; for the Son of Righteousness will appear for full salvation.

## DECEMBER 22, 1677
## THE HAND-WRITING

[2F 28:16] §.This morning I saw a Hand with a Pen, writing upon a little square, like steel or slade, which was repeated to me, saying: Despise not that Holy Degree, to which my Spirit has wrought you. Know you not, that the Holy Thing, which is rising out of the Center, must have time to work through all that Dark Matter, which does lie in the Veil of Flesh? Therefore patiently give way to that, which will go its own pace; for the Spirit well knows its own tract. And if you wholly trust Him for your Guide, He will bring you to the right Door, which shall never more be shut upon you.

### DECEMBER 23, 1677
### THE BLESSING OF INCREASE*

[2F 28:17] §.I was invaded in my mind, with that which would have awakened a distrust, concerning the consummation of that Perfect Degree, into which I have been thus far wrought up unto, through Internal Purity attained. Yet finding the waves of sense apt to break in, upon this I was made to pray with all vehemence, lest the Spark of Faith should hereby be quenched. So after much strife this Word came in for comfort, saying: You shall yet honor the Lord your God with that substance that will open out of Wisdom's Treasury. Abide but firm and immoveable in the Heavenly Calling, from which expect the Blessing of the Increase, for the bringing in of that, which will assuredly bring joy and ease to the heavy and oppressed in mind.

### DECEMBER 24, 1677
### THE BEMOANING OF EPHRAIM*

[2F 28:18] §.My spirit deeply sympathized with one that was in travel with me, for the Revelation of Christ’s Heavenly Kingdom: who in bindings and spiritual droughts, and famine passing often through with me, therefore obliged to be fellow-helpers of each other in every Hour of Trial and Temptation. I besought the Lord and made inquiry on his behalf, and this Word was given: I have heard the bemoaning of *Ephraim*, against whom a Confederacy of Spirits has been working. But they shall all be broken as a Potter’s Vessel, while in Love and Faith he adheres fearingly to my Living Word. Then know that he, the *Ephraim* of the Right-Hand Blessing, may come through all Tribulations, to stand in victory with the Lamb, upon the Mount of Joy and Liberty. To which, dear Lord, bring him through all that which would hold him under and depress him. Oh that Oily Pool, that can soon dissolve the Dark Stone; Let it rise and spring, that we may find our way up to you made free and clear, forever to be conversant in Spirit, with you All-Heavenly One.

### DECEMBER 25, 1677
### DRESSING AND TRIMMING*

[2F 28:19] §.This Word visited me: How great is the goodness that is treasured up for those that love and long for the Mighty God and the Everlasting Savior? Dress therefore, and Trim yourselves every day for your Bridegroom: who takes great pleasure when He finds you all comely and sitting at the deep Manifestation Gate. Oh sweet Jesus, if you will open this Gate, and give us your Loves, we will not remove, because of the Sweet and Pleasant Savor that issues forth from you. Oh come, with all pulling force, that as a Bright Cloud, we may be of a dissolving nature, for all Love's impressions from you: and that so we may see ourselves one with your celestial nature unchangeably.

### DECEMBER 26, 1677
### THE CLOTHING OF POWER*

[2F 28:20] §.This Word was opened in me this morning, saying, After all knowledge and believing in Him, with whom your superior life lies hid: now your great business and concern is to travail for its manifestation in, and according to *Redeeming* power. By which it may appear in its own native liberty, and act for itself in sovereignty, as having put on the Lord Jesus as your Clothing of Power. For nothing else will commend you in the sight of men.

## DECEMBER 29, 1677
## A CAUTION AGAINST PROPHETS OF JUDGMENT

[2F 28:21] §.Upon the consideration of *A.W.*'s Prophecy, it was advised me, that we should have no part with her in divine justice, nor be agents in the Avenging Property, in desiring Plagues and Vials of Wrath to come so immediately upon the formal churches. It was shown me that it was not the time, nor is the manner yet revealed, how they should be overturned. God had permitted her, though a Lamb of Christ's Fold, to be sifted and tried, through the opening of a center, from which spirits did strongly thus prophesy, as to the time and manner, and did upon her spirit impress the time, and so deceived her herein. The Lord restore her, and give her a more distinct Discerning of Spirits, from the several centers, from which sounds and voices proceed.

[2F 28:22] *The Kingdom of Love,* cried the Voice in me, *is that which will open, and be strong to prevail.* Even that Ministration of Love shedding abroad by the Holy Ghost, is to drown and quench the Wrath; and Angels that are strong and powerful in the Compassionate Love, the Lamb of God will raise up, to be eminent for trust, in the agitating and managing of the great spiritual affairs belonging to His Priestly Kingdom: that is, upon its revealing to be more visible, and shall mightily prosper in the Hand of such, who are the Pure and Meek of the Earth; who thereby open the Love-Center, out of which the Unction of Prophecy and True Revelation infallibly proceeds for their direction.

## DECEMBER 30, 1677
## THE DAILY EXPECTATION NOT FRUSTRATED

[2F 28:23] §.Upon some considerations, which were weighty upon my mind, concerning the daily expectation of that Kingdom, which by the Holy Ghost comes to be manifested; And calling over many foregoing things, which as to this, might usher in the Temple-Glory, which is so beautiful and desirable to spirits that are waiting here for it, this was shown me: That Vision and Prophecy were but as the Door-Posts and Threshold, whereupon the Glory of the Lord often hereby breaks out, as the Gate of Manifestation opens. But it shuts and closes up, as not to abide upon the threshold of that, which gives entrance into the Most Holy Place; where is the full and fixed residence of the Majesty of Glory. Which for duration upon any cannot be found, till entered beyond the ministration of the Manifestation Door, which makes way here for it, by raising the Mind of the Spirit through the Light. For the true and real enjoyment of God's Pure Being conjugally, wherein all fullness of joy, power and peace may spring, as from a Fountain opens within, as co-existing with that which is the matter for the Kingdom of Heaven, that must bear rule over all that comes in by this Fall.

[2F 28:24] To which end, the Light of Revelation is come to the Door of the Threshold of the Lord's Tabernacle, that thereby we might see our way to enter: Watching all opportunity for a through and clear pass into the fruitional Joy of the Lord, patiently enduring, till the Lord Himself shall say: *Up, and rise and follow me, who, as on an Eagle-Body, will you my dear ones, mount and bear into my Father's inward court: Where neither care, fear, nor sorrow shall afflict you more.* Oh my Lord, this is that Perfect State that our sighs and groans have long gone up for. Let full assurance be given for present support unto us, who are looking for Complete Redemption. Upon which this Word sprung: *Fear not, that you shall always stand, as at the Entering Gate. Jesus your Lord well-knows the voice of His own Mates, from whom He will not long separate Himself. Therefore believe, and quietly wait in all pureness and meekness; for He will come, and will no longer tarry from His own, lest their spirits should be drunk up with sorrow.* It was further said, *If you be in heaviness for me your Lord, then may you expect a return of Peace and Joy successively, in and through My Love abounding towards you.*

# Chapter 29
# The Conclusion

## of this Second Volume

[2F 29:1] §.All these are the faithful and true sayings which are given in for a stay, and a Pledge of Love from God, till the Morning *Star* of *Wisdom* shall arise more fully in our hearts, to lead us up into the fruition of all that has been here prophesied and declared. I excite all the Beloved Flocks that belong to the Great Kingly Shepherd's Fold, to believe, hope, and quietly wait for, as to the fulfilling part of all that has been made known and revealed in this Volume. For it is now the Day of the *Spirit,* which is beginning to spread over the Earth: Wherein the empty and the hungry, who have long wandered upon the Barren Mountains, and been as in Famine, shall be satisfied, and enter into those fat and full pastures, where the Lord Himself shall be their Leader and Feeder: that so we may in pure Love-unity together celebrate an Holy *Feast* to our high and mighty *Jehovah;* eating our Spiritual Morsels in joy and gladness, and sending up our Offerings of Praise to Him that was *LOVE,* that is *LOVE,* and that ever shall be the same.

Even so: *Amen.*

# Chapter 30
# Postscript: "Another" Genealogy

[2F 30:1] §.It may possibly seem very harsh to some, what is found [March 12, 1677], *There is yet a Woman to be revealed out from the Heavens, whereof Mary, that brought forth Christ according to the Flesh, was but a Type. For it was neither Eve, nor she to whom the Promise was made concerning the Birth, which should Bruise the Serpent's Seven-Headed Power. There must be Another Genealogy found out, from which the Serpent Treader must also come.* But it is very far from the Author's intent (as it may be plainly evidenced both from the scope in this particular place, and also from the whole drift of her writings), to derogate hereby from the high preeminence of Christ, the Son of *Mary,* above all human births whatever: or from the honor of that Holy Virgin, whom all generations of the world must call *Blessed Among Women.*

[2F 30:2] But the design of this passage is no other than that of the author of the Epistle to the Hebrews, when he represents the great and True *Melchizedek* to be: *Without father, without mother, without descent.* Which cannot be understood any otherwise than of an earthly father and mother, and an earthly descent, it being immediately afterward added: *Having neither beginning of days, nor end of life;* which words can in no wise be applicable to His outward Corporeal Birth from the Virgin *Mary.* Therefore the Apostle herein directs them to look for *Another Genealogy,* and higher descent; while he seems to take away for the present (or rather to pass over) the former. So that he would not have them to fix their eye upon His temporal generation in an elementary form, which had both Beginning of Days and End of Time; but rather to look to the Generation which was *before* all time: from the Eternal Father through the Womb of the Morning; from where all Angelical and Human spirits were afterwards produced, being called *Sons of the Morning,* that is, of the Immortal, Virgin, Heavenly Principle or Matrix.

[2F 30:3] This Celestial Nativity, being overclouded in many of the Angels, through their *tartarosis,* mentioned by St. *Peter* (in seeking to sink themselves into their own independent will, that so they might be as *Elohim;* by precipitating their spiritual forces from the Center of the Divine Will, and going forth from a proper Center of their own), and also in all the Human Race (through the Birth of Eve, entering into the lust and strife of the Elements, deluded hereto by the Seven-Headed Serpent): cannot possibly reappear till the Seven Heads, Powers, or Forms of the Serpent be entirely *bruised* or crushed. This is to be done in each particular soul, which has within itself as the Kingdom of Heaven, so also the Kingdom of Hell, as it were in miniature; before there can be an attainment of that person to the Redemption of the Body, which is the Visible Adoption, Recognition, and Sealing of the Sons and Daughters of God. And it is likewise to be done in the whole Church universally, by the Seed of Immortality flowing through the glorious humanity of *Jesus.* Which Seed, as it raised up His mortal body, cannot but also in due time raise up all His members: and cause the Vanished Image once more to appear; and the luster of their First Nativity from God to shine forth, as without any Cloud.

[2F 30:4] Therefore let the reader remember this caution, not at all to look outwards, or to seek here or there after particularities or personalities, which will avail him nothing to know, and probably may

do him great hurt: but to retire into the inward depth of his own heart, that he may there come to know such a Birth from out of the Womb of the New Jerusalem Mother, that is so much spoken of in these writings, and may be a Witness of the trampling down the Serpent's power and polity. Then would he not be solicitous about who should be first honored by Christ with the Marks of His Resurrection, but would endeavor to press forward to it, by the only allowable emulation of humility, love, and faith; That if possible he may arrive to the right of the Firstborn Heirs of God in the *Melchizedek* line. And then also would he clearly see, that nothing that is here said tends to the lessening, but to the greatening rather, and extending the merit of *Jesus* the Son of God and of *Mary:* the *True* Christ, blessed and adored forever: to whom every knee both in Heaven, and in Earth, and under the Earth shall bow and confess Him that is, that was, and that is to come.

F I N I S.

# Advertisement:
# A List of Jane Lead Books

§.Whereas some things have been scandalously set forth and printed under the name of this Author, to the reproach of truth, and the dishonor of that which is holy, it is thought fit for the putting a stop to such impostures, and the evil which might there ensue, to give a Catalogue of the *books* which the Author has thus far published.

The *Heavenly Cloud Now Breaking,* The Lord Christ's Ascension-Ladder sent down, to show the way to reach the Ascension, and Glorification, through the Death and Resurrection. 1681.

*The Revelations of Revelations,* An Essay Towards the Unsealing, Opening, and Discovering of the Seven Seals, the Seven Thunders, and the *New Jerusalem* State. 1683

*The Enochian Walks with God,* Found out by a Spiritual-Traveler, whose face toward Mount-Zion above was set. 1694

*The Laws of Paradise;* Given forth by Wisdom to a Translated Spirit. 1695

*The Wonders of God's Creation, Manifested in the Variety of Eight Worlds.* A Revelation concerning the Various Degrees of Souls, and What Their Allotted Place is Expected to be Upon Departure from this World. 1695

*The Message to the* Philadelphian *Society, Wherever Dispersed over the Whole Earth,* Together with a Call to the Several Gathered Churches. 1696

*The Tree of Faith*: *or the Tree of Life, Springing up in the Paradise of God;* From which all the Wonders of the New Creation must proceed. 1696

*The Ark of Faith, or A Supplement to The Tree of Faith, for the Further Confirmation of the same.* Together with a Discovery of the *New World.* 1696

*A Fountain of Gardens, Watered by the by the Rivers of Divine Pleasure,* and Springing Up into a Paradise. *Vol. I.* 1697

*A Revelation of the Everlasting Gospel-Message, which shall never cease to be Preached Till the Hour of Christ's Eternal Judgment Shall Come.* Whereby will be Proclaimed the Last Love Jubilee, in order to the Restitution of the Whole Lapsed Creation. 1697

*A Fountain of Gardens, Vol. 2.* 1697